ŠKODA

ŠKODA Yeti
Owner's Manual


5L0012720AH

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

This manual contains instructions about the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help and technical vehicle data.

Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

5L0012720AH

Table of Contents

On board literature

You will always find this **Owner's Manual** and the **Service Plan** included in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on your vehicle equipment, the on-board literature may also include the **Radio instruction manual**, the **Infotainment system manual**and in some countries also the **On the road** brochure.

Owner's Manual
These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this operating manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

Service schedule
The service schedule includes the documentation of the vehicle handover, warranty information and service events.

The radio instruction manual
The radio instruction manual describes the operation of the radio, and in some cases various functions and vehicle systems.

Infotainment operating instructions
The Infotainment manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

On-the-road brochure
The On-the-road brochure contains phone numbers of importers and service offices in individual countries, together with emergency numbers.

Notes

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols
An overview of the symbols used in the instruction manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings.
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page.
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Trademark.
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display .
- Text display in the segment display.

WARNING
Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION
Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment
Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note
Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Owner's Manual

Structure of the manual
The operating manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left side
  - **Main chapters** (e.g. Airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content, if necessary, applies to all chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. Front airbags)

Information search
When searching for information in the operating instructions, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this owner's manual, the MAXI DOT display is used as the display in the instrument cluster unless otherwise stated.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
A2DP	a Bluetooth software profile for a one-way transfer of audio data
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AFS	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
APN	An access point name for the Wi-Fi connection
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
D	Rim depth
EU	European Union
GSM	Global system for mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HFP	Connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MDI	Inputs for connecting external devices
MFD	Multifunction display
MG	Manual gearbox

Abbreviation	Definition
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
rSAP	a Bluetooth ® software profile for the remote transmission of the SIM data
SIM card	a card for the identification of the mobile network operator
SSP	Connect two devices using Bluetooth ® profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
UMTS	the next generation of the GSM network (3G)
VIN	Vehicle identification number
Wi-Fi	wireless data network
WLAN	wireless connection of electronic devices for data transfer (wireless)
WPS	wireless connection of devices for electronic data transfer (WiFi) using an automatically generated key

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
✓ Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
✓ Secure all items of luggage.
✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 23, *Transporting children safely*.
✓ Adopt the correct seated position » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

✓ Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiters for the front seats.
› Belt tensioners for the front seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Driver's knee airbag.

› Front side airbags.
› Rear side airbags.
› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height.
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 23, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

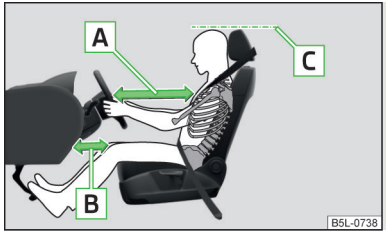

Fig. 1
Correct seated position for the driver

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - B » Fig. 1.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1. Adjust the steering wheel » page 10, *Adjusting the steering wheel position*.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 1.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 77.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

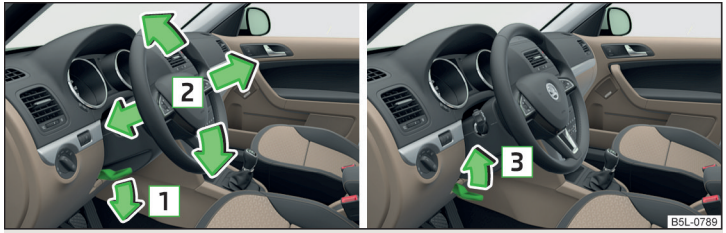

Fig. 2 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swivel the safety lever under the steering wheel downwards in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 2.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder in arrow direction 3 until the stop.

WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked while you are driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – risk of accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 77.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 21, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 23, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 77.

Examples of an incorrect seating position

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seats.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- ✓ Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- ✓ Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

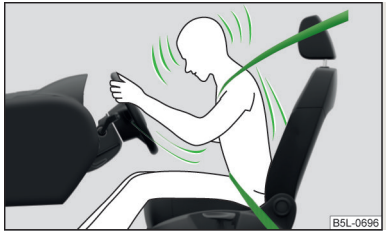

Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 23.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 14, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 9.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or similar items, which inhibit the safety belt locking function. A seat belt which is too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 84.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 176, *Safety belts*.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

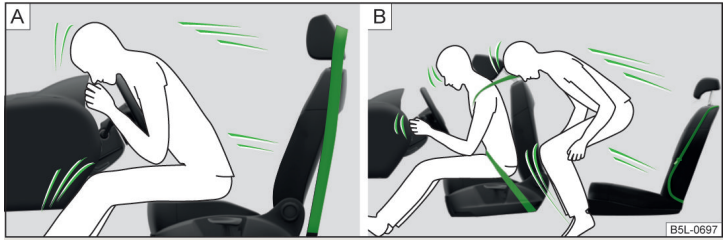

Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 – B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

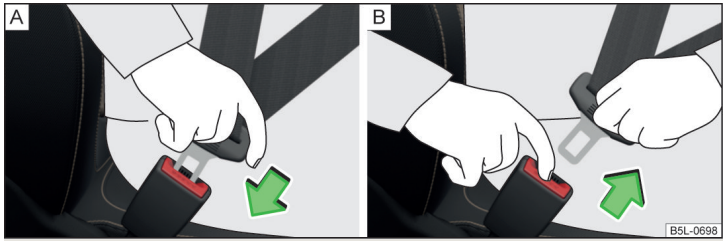

Fig. 5 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

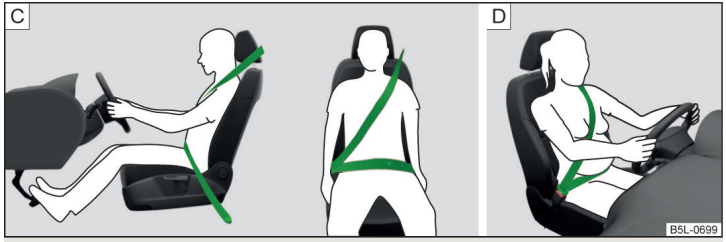

Fig. 6 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 9.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 5 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - B; the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Seat belt for the rear middle seat

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The seat belt for the rear middle seat is anchored in the area of the boot on the left side of the headliner.

Fasten

› Pull the belt with both lock tongues out of the headliner mount.
› Insert the lock tongue at the end of the belt into the belt buckle on the left side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull the second lock tongue, which is moveable on the seat belt, over the chest and insert it into the belt buckle on the right side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull on the seat belt to check that both lock tongues are securely engaged in the locks.

The belt tongues for the rear middle seat are shaped differently so that they only fit into the correct belt buckle. If you are not able to insert a lock tongue into the wrong belt lock you probably tried to put it into the wrong buckle.

Release

› Take off the safety belt in the reverse order to how you fasten it.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the webbing rolls up easily, the seat belt is not twisted and the trim panel is not damaged.

! WARNING

- After releasing the seat belt hold it tight and let it slowly reel up until both lock tongues lock into the headliner mount and are secured with a magnet - there is a risk of injury.
- Never unlock both lock tongues simultaneously.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Intertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side collisions.

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 40.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.

› Electronic control unit.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 18.
› Driver's knee airbag » page 19.
› Side airbags » page 19.
› Head airbags » page 20.
› Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 40.
› Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 22.
› Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 22.

Note

▪ The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
▪ If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
▪ When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

› Driver's front airbag.
› Front passenger airbag.
› Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

› Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.

› The interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position).
› The hazard warning lights are switched on.
› All doors are unlocked.
› The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags

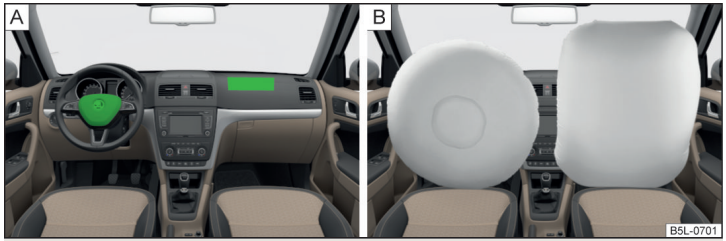

Fig. 8 **Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags**

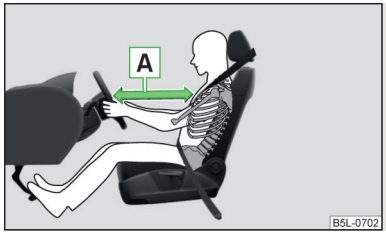

Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A .

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 21, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with driver's airbag, the text **AIRBAG** can be found on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbag, the text **AIRBAG** is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

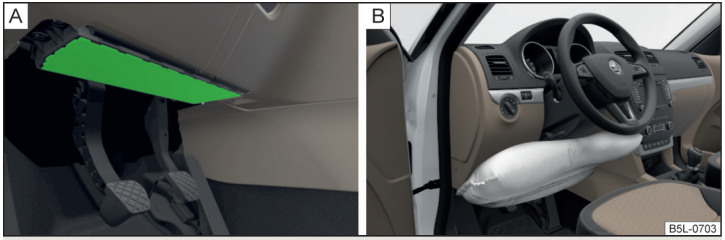

Fig. 10 **Position of the airbag / gas filled airbag**

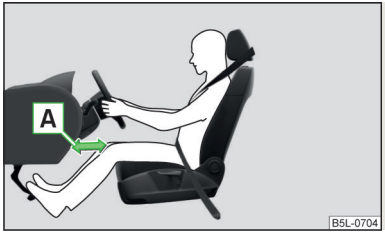

Fig. 11
Safe distance from the control panel

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10 - A.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 10 - B and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs A and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 11. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, a symbol with the word AIRBAG is located on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

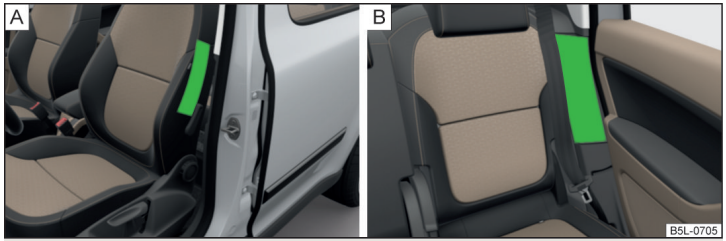

Fig. 12 **Installation of airbags in front/rear seat**

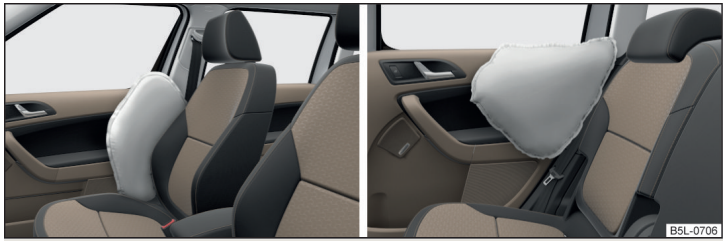

Fig. 13 **Inflated airbags**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 12 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 12- B.

When the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 13 and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 25, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 23, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 168, *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

- In vehicles with side airbags a label with the text **AIRBAG** is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the word AIRBAG is located between the entrance area and the rear seat rest **AIRBAG**.

Head airbags

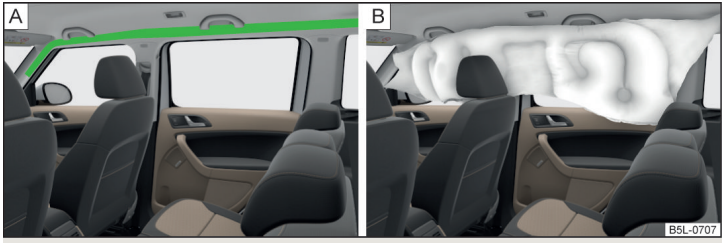

Fig. 14 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 14 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 14 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the fitted accessories could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbag, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the B and C column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 23, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 22, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
- The warning light OFF » Fig. 15 *on page 22* - B comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

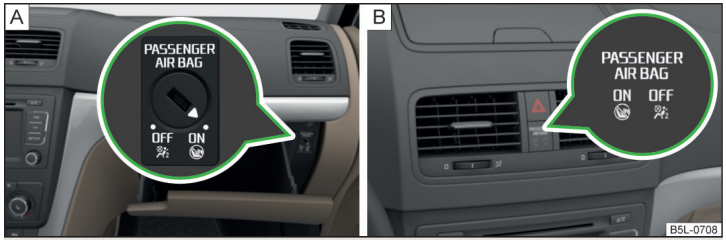

Fig. 15 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF** » Fig. 15 - A.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light OFF under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 15 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON** » Fig. 15 - A.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light ON under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 15 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The ON warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the ON OFF warning lights flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key can not be inserted in the key switch while driving.
  - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
  - The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 24, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 82. After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan

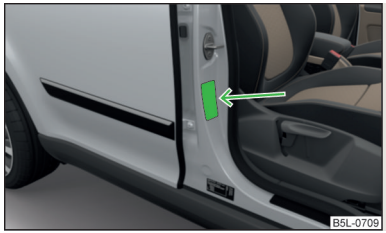

Fig. 16
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

Fig. 17 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 23 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 21, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 16. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 17.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 18 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 23 first.

No babies, infants or children to be carried on the passenger seat.

Also indicated by the label on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 18.

Child safety and side airbag

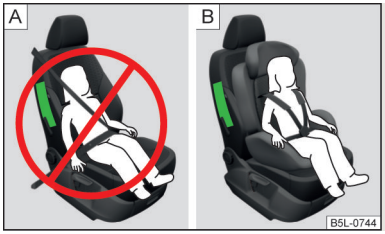

Fig. 19
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 23 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 19 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 19 B, so that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible.

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 23 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! and ! on page 23 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

attachment points of the ISOFIX system

Fig. 20
Rear seat: ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for a fast and secure child-seat mounting.

There are two fixing eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the front passenger seat for fixing a child seat with the ISOFIXsystem.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 20.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the use-ability of the child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a]	Front passenger seat[b]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU** **IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg		**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22-36 kg		**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

[a] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

[b] If the front passenger seat is fitted with **ISOFIX** system attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for the installation of a **ISOFIX** child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the **ISOFIX** system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a **ISOFIX** child seat with the "Universal" approval and attachment with the **TOP TETHER** system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with **ISOFIX** system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

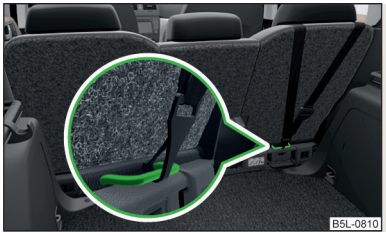

Fig. 21
The attachment point of the TOP TETHER system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The attachment points for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the back of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 21.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats with the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

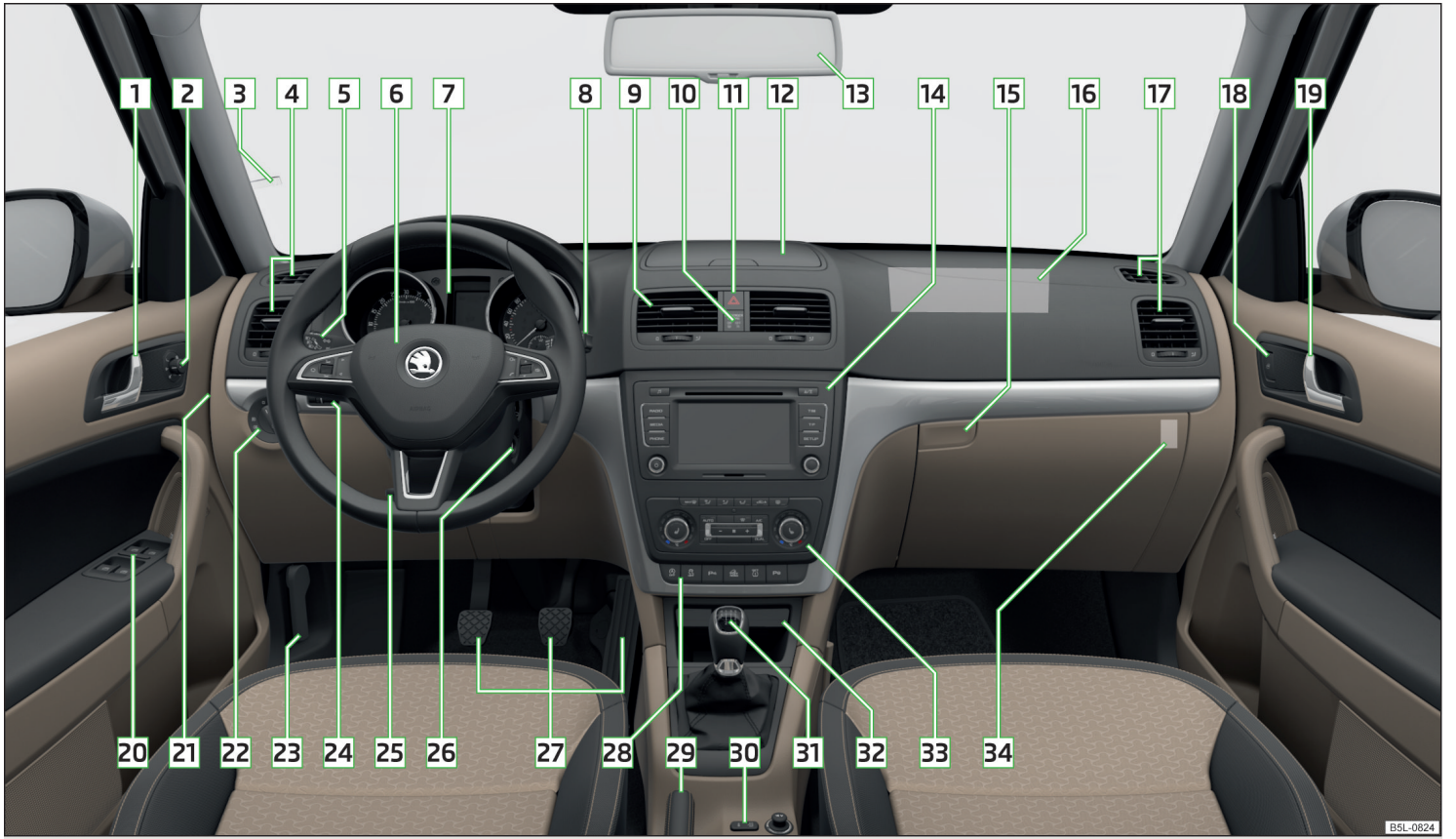

Fig. 22 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Door opening lever — 52
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 76
3 Parking ticket holder — 86
4 Air outlet vents — 105
5 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 65
› Speed regulating system — 154
6 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 18
› With pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone — 113
7 Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights — 30
8 Operating lever:
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 72
› Multifunction display — 44
› Information system — 42
9 Air outlet vents — 105
10 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 22
11 Switch for hazard warning lights — 68
12 Storage compartment on the dash panel — 87
13 Interior rear-view mirror — 75
14 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 93
16 Front passenger airbag — 18
17 Air outlet vents — 105
18 Power window in the front passenger door — 59
19 Door opening lever — 52
20 Electric windows — 58
21 Fuse box (on side of dash panel) — 214
22 Light switch — 64
23 Bonnet release lever — 181
24 Regulator for the instrument lighting and regulator for the headlight beam range adjuster — 69, 64
25 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 10
26 Ignition lock — 132
27 Pedals — 137
28 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
› START STOP — 155
› Traction control TCS — 143
› Electronic Stability Control ESC — 143
› Parking aid — 146
› OFF ROAD-mode — 144
› Tyre pressure control indicator — 158
› Park Assist — 150
29 Handbrake lever — 136
30 Central locking system — 54
31 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 137
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 138
32 Storage compartment — 87
33 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the heating — 107
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 107
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 108
34 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 22

Note

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 22. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

Overview

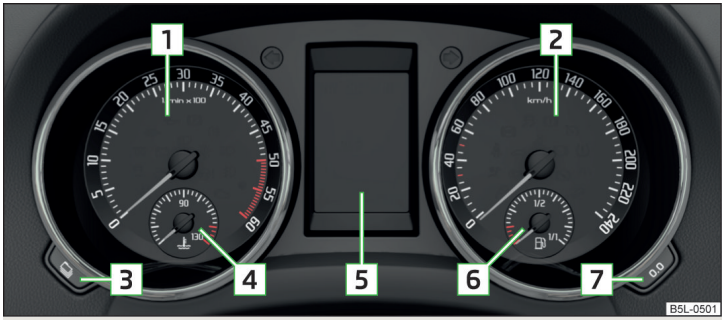

Fig. 23 **Instrument cluster**

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34
2 Speedometer » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34
3 Button for display mode:
› Time settings » page 33
› Enable/disable the display of the second speed[1] » page 33
› Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service[1] » page 49
4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 31
5 Display » page 32
6 Fuel gauge » page 32
7 Button for:
› Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 33
› Setting the time
› Enable / disable the mode selected by means of the 3 key

[1] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

Revolutions counter

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 23 *on page 30* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 43.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Speedometer

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The speedometer 2 » Fig. 23 *on page 30* displays the current speed.

Warning against excessive speeds

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

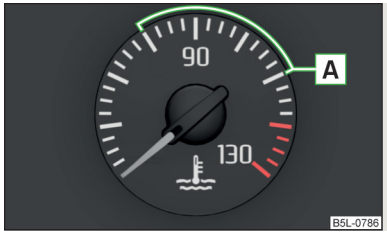

Fig. 24
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display » Fig. 24 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale A » Fig. 24. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 36.

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries.

Display

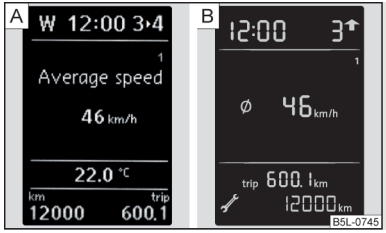

Fig. 25
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display types » Fig. 25

A MAXI DOT display.

B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

› Distance travelled » page 33
› Time » page 33
› Information system data » page 42
› Service interval display data » page 49

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Fuel gauge

Fig. 26
Fuel gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display » Fig. 26 provides information on the fuel supply in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres or 60 litres [1].

If the amount of fuel reaches the reserve area (the pointer reaches the red scale range), the indicator symbol is illuminated » page 40 .

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.

[1] Valid for Yeti 4x4.

Counter for distance driven

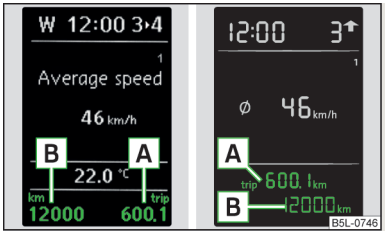

Fig. 27
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display » Fig. 27

A Counter for distance travelled (trip)

B Odometer

Counter for distance travelled (trip)
The daily trip counter shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 0.1 km.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press and hold the 7 » Fig. 23 *on page 30* button.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

i Note
If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Use buttons 3 and 7 to set the clock » Fig. 23 *on page 30*.

3 The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).

7 The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 47, *Settings*.

Display of the second speed

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display can show the current speed in mph[1].

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

MAXI DOT display
The display of the second speed can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 47, *Settings*.

Segment display
› Press key 3 » Fig. 23 *on page 30*repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes » page 33.
› Press the 7 key while the display flashes.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

The display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

Auto Check Control

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions of vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the icons in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 34, *Warning lights*.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed.

Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Warning symbols in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 37
	Check engine oil level Engine oil sensor defective	» page 184
	Problem with engine oil pressure	» page 34
	Water in fuel filter (diesel engine).	» page 34
	Clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG are too hot	» page 34

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the MAXI DOT display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)
The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display .

Water in fuel filter. Owner's manual!

The following message appears only in the segment display.

FUEL FILTER SEE MANUAL

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Automatic DSG gearbox couplings too hot
A symbol in the MAXI DOT display indicates that the temperature of the automatic gearbox DSG clutches is too high.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Gearbox overheating. Stop! Owner's manual!

Do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the icon goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

WARNING
If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 68. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Note
- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 42, *Using the information system* .
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 68. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 180, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The indicator light **illuminates** if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 186.

If the warning light lights up together with the warning light , there is a problem with the ABS.

WARNING

- If the warning light lights up together with the warning light » page 38, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten seat belts.

The indicator light **goes off** after the respective seat belt is fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 20 km/h, the warning light **flashes** and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The warning signal is switched of and the indicator light is **permanently lit** if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts within the next 90 seconds.

Alternator

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **lights up** when the engine is running but the vehicle battery is not charging.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If in addition to the symbol the symbol » page 36lights up while driving, **stop driving**- risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Door open

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The indicator light **illuminates** if one or several doors are opened.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, this indicator is replaced by a vehicle icon on the display » page 44 .

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **lights up** or **flashes**, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check engine coolant! Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » page 185.
› If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » page 186.

If the indicator light **does not illuminate** after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant is within the specified range and the warning icon is still **lit** after switching on the ignition, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Switch off the ignition.

› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 216, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are OK and the warning icon **lights up** again after switching on the ignition, **stop driving!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off - risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The indicator light **illuminates** if the boot lid is opened.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, this indicator is replaced by a vehicle icon on the display » page 44 .

Power steering / steering lock (system KESSY)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

Power steering

If the indicator light **illuminates**, this indicates a **complete failure** of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

If the indicator light **illuminates**, this indicates a **partial failure** of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

› Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

The powered steering is fully functional again if the or warning light **does not illuminate** after you switch the engine back on.

If the warning light or **illuminates** again, then immediately obtain help from an authorised dealer.

Steering lock (KESSY system)
As long as the warning light **is flashing**, the steering lock cannot be released.

If the warning light **flashes**, a signal tone sounds, and the following message appears in the MAXI DOT- display, **Steering column lock: Workshop!** appears the electrical steering lock is faulty. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **flashes**, a beep sounds and in the MAXI DOT display the message **Steering column lock faulty.** appears, then the electric steering lock is broken. Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine oil

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light flashes (low oil pressure)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil pressure: Engine off! Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 184.

If the warning light **flashes**, **do not drive any further** , even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The indicator light lights up (oil quantity too low)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check oil level!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 184.

The warning light will **go out** if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will **come on** again after driving about 100 km.

The indicator light flashes (engine oil level sensor faulty)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light **flashes** several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION
Stop driving if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Traction Control System (ASR)

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light **flashes** to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ASR might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ASR is fully functional again if the warning light **no longer illuminates** after you switch the engine back on.

Further information » page 143, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **flashes** to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ESC is fully functional again if the warning light **no longer illuminates** after you switch the engine back on.

Further information » page 143, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction control (ASR) switched off

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **lights up** when the ASR is turned off by pressing the Symbol key ASR OFF » page 143, *Traction Control System (TCS)* or » page 143, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Traction control (ASR) is deactivated.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **is lit**, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

In the event of an ABS fault, the other braking and stabilization systems are turned off » page 142, *Braking and stabilisation systems* .

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- If the warning light lights up together with the warning light » page 35, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The indicator light **illuminates** if a lamp is faulty.

The indicator light **illuminates** within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty lamp is switched on.

The following message, for example, may be shown in the MAXI DOT display.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **flashes** for 1 minute while driving or after switching on the ignition, there is a problem with the adaptive headlights.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Cornering light (AFS) not working. Owner's manual!

Note

When the AFS mode "tourist light" (travel mode) is active » page 67, the warning light **flashes** for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **lights up** after the ignition has been switched **on**. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the indicator light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, there is an engine control malfunction. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Check engine electronics (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the indicator light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the indicator light **lights up**, soot has accumulated in the filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

- ✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic transmission: position S).
- ✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
- ✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does **not go out** and the warning light begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Diesel particulate filter: Owner's manual!

The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also **lights up**.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the indicator light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the indicator light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter, we recommend that regularly driving short distances be avoided.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **is lit** when there is less than 9 litres of remaining fuel.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **lights up**, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Airbag

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

› The indicator light **comes on** for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched **on**;
› The warning light OFF in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG** in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition» page 22.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

› The warning **lights up** for approx. 4 seconds after switching **on** the ignition and then **flashes** again for approx. 12 seconds.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Airbag / belt tensioner deactivated.

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized company.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light is lit

If the warning light comes on while driving, it means one of the tyres has undergone a pressure change.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

› Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » page 191.
› Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 200 or use the repair kit » page 203.
› Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 158.

The warning light flashes for about 1 min. and remains lit

If the warning light flashes for approximately 1 minute and stays on, there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The following reasons can explain the warning light being illuminated.
- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.
- A wheel has been changed.

Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 158.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light **illuminates**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » page 182, *Windscreen washer system*.

Turn-signal system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

Either the left or right warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light **flashes** at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to **flash**.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the fog lights are operating.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the cruise control is active » page 154.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, operate the brake pedal.

OFF ROADmode

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

When the indicator light is **lit,** then the conditions for the engagement of OFF ROAD mode are met » page 144 .

When the indicator **flashes,** it indicates the hill descent assistant is currently engaged.

Further information » page 144, *OFF ROAD-mode*.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the main beam or the headlight flasher is operated.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

This information and advice is shown in the instrument cluster display or indicated by the illumination of the corresponding indicator light in the instrument cluster.

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

- Data relating to the multi-function display (MFD) » page 44.
- Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 47.
- Service interval display » page 49.
- Auto Check Control » page 33.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 138.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

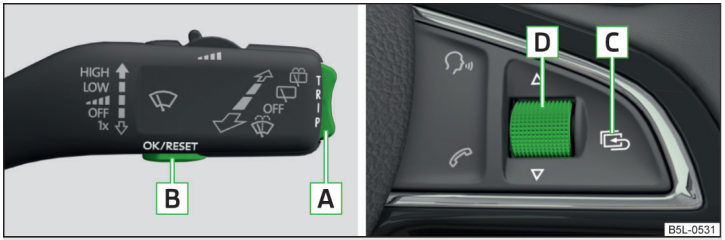

Fig. 28 **Buttons / dial: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 28.

Description of the operation

Button / adjustment wheel	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or down	Select data / set data values
	Press at the top for a longer period or down	Display main menu of the Display MAXI DOT » page 47
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	To go up one level in the menu of the Restore MAXI DOT display » page 47
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the Display MAXI DOT » page 47

Button / adjustment wheel	Action	Operation
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the following icon appears on the display in front of the temperature display ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the ❄ icon appears immediately.

Prompt in the segment display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the temperature display will show up with the following icon before this occurs ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the temperature display and the ❄ icon appear immediately.

After pressing button A » Fig. 28 *on page 42*, the most recently displayed data is shown.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

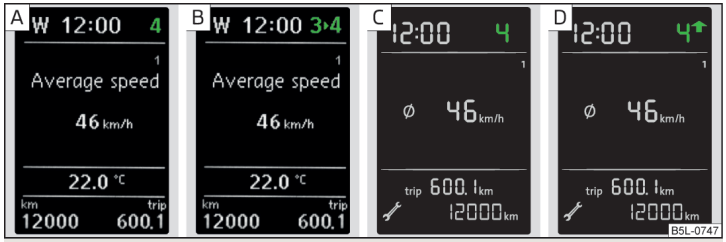

Fig. 29 **Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation**

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

Recommended gear
MAXI DOT display.

A Optimal gear engaged
B Recommended gear

Segment display

C Optimal gear engaged
D Recommended gear

Gear recommendation - MAXI DOT display
Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ▶ and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if 3 ▶ 4 appears in this display, you are recommended to shift from 3rd into 4th gear. Switch gear.

Gear recommendation - segment display
The **recommended** [1] gear and the arrow icon is displayed.
› ↑ - Recommends that you shift to a **higher** gear
› ↓ - Recommends that you shift to a **lower** gear

If for example, if 4 ↑ is shown in the display with vehicles with **manual gearbox** you are recommended to shift from a lower gear to the 4th gear.

If for example 4 ↑ is shown in the display with vehicles with an **automatic gearbox** which is in manual transmission mode (Tiptronic), you are recommended to shift from 4th gear to a higher gear.

WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment
A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display
If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

Vehicles with a segment display
If at least one door or the tailgate is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up » page 36.

If at least one door or the tailgate is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up » page 36.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

[1] With vehicles that have an automatic gearbox and in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic) the **currently engaged gear is** shown.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFD** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 47, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 47, *Settings*.

WARNING
- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Note
- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory

Fig. 30
Multi-function display - memory display

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

In memory the values of some of the multifunction display information (e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded.

The multifunction display is equipped with two memories, **1** and **2**.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position A . » Fig. 30

1 Single-trip memory
2 Total trip memory

Select memory
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 45, *Information overview*.
› Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Reseting
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 45, *Information overview*.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold to confirm the selected memory.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)
The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)
The total-trip memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1 999 kilometres driven (S), and up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes or 9 999 kilometres driven (M).

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.
› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

The information overview of the Multifunction Display (the number of items displayed varies depending on equipment).

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 45, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes (S) and 99 hours and 59 minutes (M). The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km[1].

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » page 45, *Memory*. After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), a fuel consumption of 10 l./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is updated according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 45, *Memory*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km (S) and 9 999 km (M). The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 45, *Memory*.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current driving speed
The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer 2 » Fig. 23 *on page 30*.

Oil temperature[3]
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a there is fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, **– –.–** symbols are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » page 46, *Warning at excessive speeds*.

Warning at excessive speeds

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S).
› Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item[4].
› Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.
[2] On some models in certain countries, – -.- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.
[3] Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.
[4] If no value is set the output value 30 km/h is automatically displayed.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit

› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S).
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
› By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (Segment display) appears in the display at the same time as the set threshold.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** In addition, it provides information, depending on vehicle equipment, about the radio, multi-function display (MFA), telephone and infotainment navigation. Furthermore, it allows the adjustment of some other features of your vehicle.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

In order to activate the primary menu **MAIN MENU**, press and hold down Button A or C » Fig. 28 *on page 42*. By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 44
- **Audio** » *Radio instruction manual*or » *Infotainment radio instruction manual*
- **Navigation** » *Infotainment navigation manual*
- **Phone** » page 113;
- **Aux. heating** » page 110
- **Assist systems** » page 157
- **Vehicle status** » page 33
- **Settings** » page 47

The menu items **Audio** and **Navigation** are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio, Infotainment radio or Infotainment navigation systems are switched on.

The menu item **Phone** appears only on vehicles with the universal phone installation kit (hands free) » page 114.

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu » page 42, *Using the information system*.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- Operation of factory-fitted radio / navigation » *Radio manual* or » *Infotainment radio manual* or » *Infotainment navigation manual*.

Settings

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

You can change certain settings by means of the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language
You can set the language for the display texts here.

MFD data
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Convenience
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here.

Rain closing	Activate/deactivate the function for automatically closing the window and the tilt/slide sunroof in a locked vehicle when it starts raining[a]. If the function is activated and it is not raining, the windows including the panoramic tilt/slide sunroof will **close** automatically after approx. 12 hours.
ATA confirm	Switch on/off the audible signal indicating activation of the anti-theft alarm system. Further information » page 56, *Anti-theft alarm system*.
Central locking	Switch on/off the central locking and automatic locking function. Further information » page 54, *Individual settings*.
Window op.	Only convenience mode for the driver window or for all of the windows can be adjusted here. Further information » page 60, *Window convenience operation*.
Mirror down	Activate/deactivate the function for mirror lowering on the front passenger side when in the reverse gear[b]. Further information » page 76, *Fold in passenger's mirror*.
Mirror adjust.	Activation / deactivation of the synchronous exterior mirror function settings. Further information » page 76, *Synchronous adjustment of the mirror*.
Factory setting	Restore the Convenience factory setting.

[a] This function is only available on vehicles with a rain sensor.
[b] This function is only available on vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver seat.

Lights & Vision
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Coming Home	Activate/deactivate and adjust the light duration of the COMING HOME function. Further information » page 68, *COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME*.
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the LEAVING HOME function. Further information » page 68, *COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME*.
Dayl. dri. light	Activate/deactivate the daylight driving light. Further information » page 65, *Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)*.
Rear wiper	Activate/deactivate the function of the automatic rear window wiping. Further information » page 74, *Automatic rear window wiping*.
Lane ch. flash	Activate/deactivate the lane ch. flash function. Further information » page 66, *"Convenience turn signal"*.
Travel mode	Activate/deactivate the travel mode feature. Further information » page 67, *Tourist lights (Travel mode)*.
Factory setting	Restore the factory setting for the lighting.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed can be adjusted. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 191, *Tyres and wheel rims*.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Winter tyres, max. speed ... km / h.

Units
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Assistants
The tones of the audible signals for the parking aid can be adjusted here.

Further information » page 146, *Parking aid*.

Alt. speed dis.
Here, the display of the second speed in mph[1] can be activated.

Further information » page 33, *Display of the second speed*.

Service
The days and kilometres remaining until the next service can be displayed here.

Further information » page 49, *Service interval display*.

Factory setting
The display functions can be restored to their factory settings here.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually if necessary.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Note
Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service
If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears: **Oil change in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil change now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on!

Inspection
If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on!

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 47, *Settings* or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 47, *Main menu* .

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Prompt in the segment display

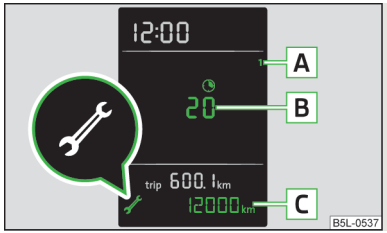

Fig. 31
Segment display: Example of a message

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Explanation of image » Fig. 31

- Service due
- A Differentiating between types of service
- B Days remaining until the next service interval
- C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval[1)]

Differentiating between types of service

The service type is determined by the number in position A » Fig. 31.

1 Oil change service

2 Inspection

Service due

If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 31.

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.

› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.

› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon and the message **OIL CHNG** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service interval

You can press button 3 » Fig. 23 *on page 30* repeatedly to display the remaining distance and time to until the next service whenever the ignition is switched on.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button 3 is pressed again.

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.

› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.

› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display, the values of a new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

[1)] The kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed instead of the odometer.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after unlocking

› The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light operated via the door contact illuminates.
› The SafeLock system is switched off.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after locking

› The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior light operated via the door contact goes out.
› The SafeLock system is switched on.
› The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 210.
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Note

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Unlock / lock using key and lock

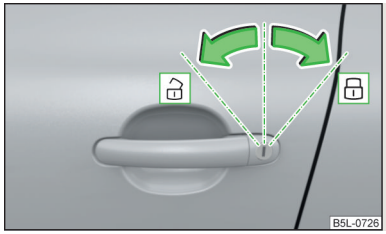

Fig. 32
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The key allows you to unlock and lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door.

Unlocking / locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 32

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

Unlocking / locking with the remote control key

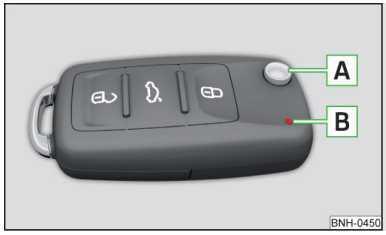

Fig. 33
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Function and description of the remote control key » Fig. 33

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking / locking the boot lid

A Button for the extension / retraction of the key

B Warning light

Unlocking / locking the boot lid

Press the symbol key for a short period to unlock the boot lid. After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Press and hold the symbol key to release the boot lid (partially opened).

If the boot lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing.

You can set a lock delay » page 58.

! CAUTION

- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

i Note

For vehicles with anti-theft alarm the acoustic signals can also be activated/deactivated by locking/unlocking » page 47.

Opening/closing a door

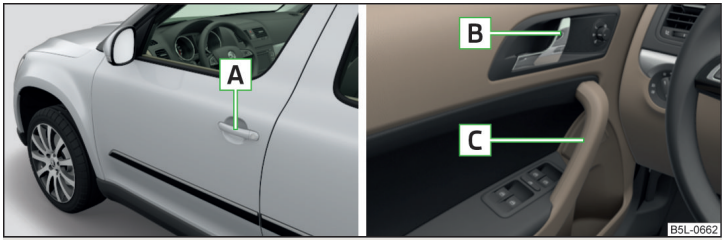

Fig. 34 **Door handle/door opening lever:**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle.

› Pull on door handle A » Fig. 34 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

› Pull on door opening lever B of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

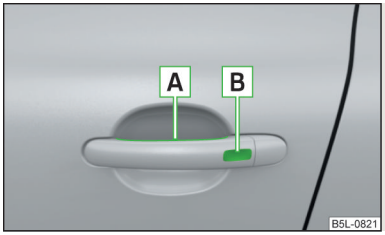

Fig. 35
Sensors in the handle of the front door

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Sensors in the handle of the front door » Fig. 35

A Unlocking sensor
B Locking sensor

Unlocking

› Grasp the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor A » Fig. 35with the palm of your hand.» !

Locking

› Touch the sensor B » Fig. 35 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 39 *on page 57*.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor B, it is not possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor A - prevents against accidental unlocking.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key with which the vehicle has been unlocked is left in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again. If no door is opened within approximately 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the boot lid is released (partially opened). The turn-signal lights flash four times as an indication that the vehicle has been unlocked again. The luggage compartment lid **remains released**(partially open). The other doors remain locked.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key in vehicle.**
S **KEY IN VEHICLE**

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

System fault

If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Keyless faulty.**
S **CHECK KEYLESS**

CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.

▪ After leaving the car there is no automatic locking.
▪ The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

Safe securing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle cannot be opened from the inside any more.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!**
S **CHECK DEADLOCK**

Switching off
The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› By locking twice within 2 seconds.
› By disabling the interior monitoring » page 56, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-off display
The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display
The indicator light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

! WARNING
If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The following central locking functions can be set via the MAXI DOT display » page 47, *Settings* .

Opening a single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlock all doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. It is also possible to unlock the vehicle by pressing the central locking button.

Locking / unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

Fig. 36
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 36 rocker switch can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Unlocking / locking » Fig. 36

Locking
Unlocking

If the icon in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

If the icon in the button is not lit, the vehicle is not locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.
› Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 54, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

CAUTION

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock

Fig. 37 **Back door: left / right**

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety system on and off » Fig. 37

Switching on
Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

Failure of the central locking
If the central locking system fails, only the driver's door can be locked / unlocked with the key. The other doors and the tailgate can be emergency-locked or unlocked.
› Unlocking / locking » page 52 for vehicles without remote control.
› Unlocking / locking for vehicles with remote control » page 211.
› Emergency locking of the door » page 211.
› Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 212.

Displaying an error
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Discharged battery in the remote control key
If the red indicator light B » Fig. 33 *on page 52* does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty.

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Renew key battery!
KEY BATTERY

Replace the battery » page 210.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people trying to break into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

Triggering the alarm
The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle » page 56.
- Movement in the vehicle » page 56.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer » page 163, *Coupling / uncoupling trainer*.

If the driver's door of a vehicle with a remote control is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

Activating
The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Note
You can switch the audible signalling of the activation of the warning system on and off in the Maxi DOT display in the menu item **ATA confirm** » page 47.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Fig. 38
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating
The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivate
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button OFF » Fig. 38 on the B column of the driver's side.

The illumination of the symbol OFF in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

CAUTION
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!

WARNING (Continued)
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – risk of injury!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Note
The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing

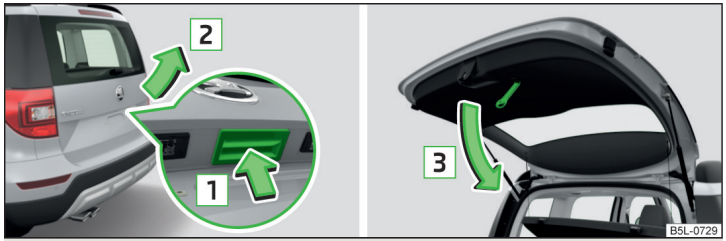

Fig. 39 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening / closing tailgate » Fig. 39

1 Unlocking the door
2 Open flap
3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button on the remote control key.

Power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 60. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 172, *Windows and mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 60.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. After the driver's or front passenger's door has been opened, the windows can only be operated by using button A » Fig. 40 *on page 59*.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.
- The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Open / close windows

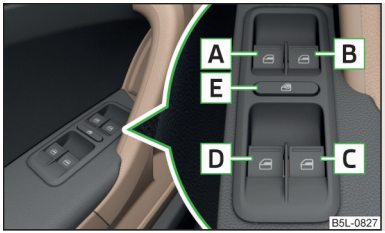

Fig. 40
Power window buttons

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 40

- A Front door left
- B Front door right
- C Left rear door:
- D Left rear door
- E Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

› Press the button E » Fig. 40.

When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the warning light in the button E lights up.

! WARNING

If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that for safety reasons the buttons in the rear doors are disabled with the button E .

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

Fig. 41
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the **down** button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the **up** button as far as the stop.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Force limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
› Press and hold he central locking button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 36 *on page 54*.
› Hold button A » Fig. 40 *on page 59* in the opening position.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› Press and hold he central locking button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 36 *on page 54*.
› Hold button A » Fig. 40 *on page 59* in the closing position.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor B » Fig. 35 *on page 53*.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Window op.** . » page 47.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the key or the respective button is released.

Operational faults

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The electric window levers do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Mechanical windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windows can be operated mechanically by the winder attached to the respective door panel.

! WARNING

The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- If windows are frozen, always remove ice » page 172, *Windows and mirrors* before operating the electrical power windows. The window seals and the electrical power window mechanism can otherwise be damaged.
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust and other dirt can get into the vehicle and the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Opening / closing windows

Fig. 42 **Window operation: left / right**

Read and observe and on page 60 first.

Only one window can be operated mechanically at any time.

Opening

Lift the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 42.

Closing

Turn the crank in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 42.

Panorama sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

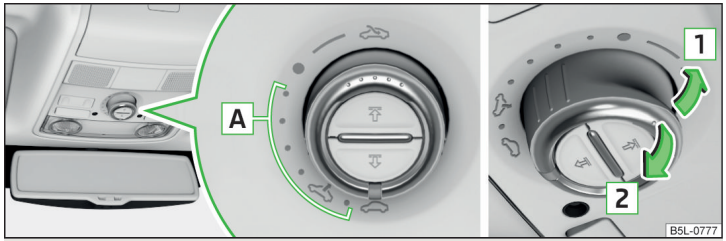

Fig. 43 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe on page 61 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch.

Operation of the sliding / tilting roof » Fig. 43

- Open fully
- A Open partially
- ● Comfort position
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Closing (switch in position)

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding / tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pulling on the recess in the switch in the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 43 until the sliding / tilting roof is fully closed .

WARNING
When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION
During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Sliding / tilting roof malfunction

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate correctly. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence:
› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 43 *on page 61*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.
› The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
› Release the lever.

Opening/closing the sun screen

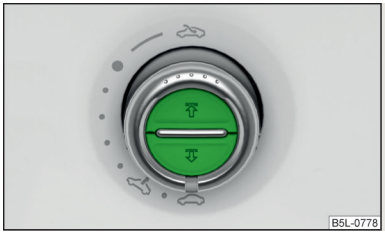

Fig. 44
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The sliding sun blind (hereinafter only referred to as a sun screen) can be opened or closed using the buttons.

Operation of the sun blind » Fig. 44

- Opening
- Closing

Press the button to fully open or close.the sun blind. The movement of the sun blind can be stopped by briefly pressing any key.

By pressing and holding the button, the sun blind is opened or closed in the desired position. By releasing the button, the opening or closing operation is stopped.

WARNING
When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Malfunction of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun blind will not operate correctly. The sun blind must be activated.

Activation sequence.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 44 *on page 62*.

› Press the button and hold down.
› The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
› Release the button.

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor A --» Fig. 35 *on page 53*.

Closing
The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor B » Fig. 35 *on page 53*.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor B when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof
› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.

! WARNING
Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not work when convenience closing is in operation.

i Note
The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 45 *on page 64*. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 172, *Headlight glasses*.

! WARNING
- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Operating the lights

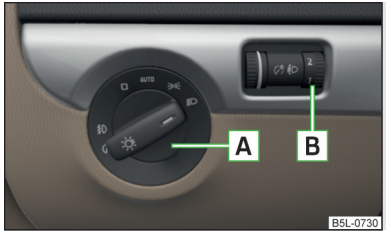

Fig. 45
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A » Fig. 45 can be moved to the following positions.

Turn switch

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Automatic switching of lights on and off » page 66
Switching on the parking light or parking light » page 69
Switching on the low beam

Pull switch

Switching on the front fog lamp » page 67
Switching on the rear fog light » page 67

Lights and visibility

Turn the dial B » Fig. 45 from position – to 3 to gradually adjust the headlight range control and shorten the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Bi-Xenon headlights

The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- The light switch is in position or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically and the status light is lit. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 45 *on page 64*.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

Deactivating the function

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the turning signal and main beam lever (» Fig. 46 *on page 65*) towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Activating the function

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the turning signal and main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push it up and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, the function can be enabled or disabled in the menu item **Dayl. dri. light** » page 47, *Settings* .

! WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

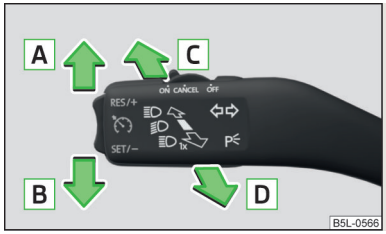

Fig. 46
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 46

- A Switch on right turn signal
- B Switch on left turn signal
- C Switch on high beam (spring-loaded position)
- D Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam

The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the high beam is switched on.

Headlight flasher

The headlight flasher system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the headlight flasher is switched on.

Flashing

When the left flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"
If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

The "Lane ch. flash" can be activated or deactivated via the Maxi DOT display in the **Lane ch. flash**» page 47, *Settings* menu item.

WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control

Fig. 47
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 47, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The light on / off switching is controlled by a sensor mounted under the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 47.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position 1 or wiping - position 2 or 3 is turned on » page 73, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

CAUTION
Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The AFS system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle to the driving speed or the use of the wiper.

The AFS system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO** » page 66.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

City mode
The light cone in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates this and the adjacent sidewalks, intersections, pedestrian crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km / h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 120 km/h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active when the wipers operate continuously for longer than 2 minutes at a speed of 20 - 70 km / h. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km.h and in all AFS modes.

Tourist lights (Travel mode)
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When this mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

This mode can be enabled or disabled via the MAXI DOT display in the **Travel mode**» page 47, *Settings* menu option.

WARNING
If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Note
When the "tourist light" mode is active, the warning light flashes for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Fog lights

Fig. 48
Light switch: Turn on front and rear fog light

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 48.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 34.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The CORNER function improves illumination of the vehicle surroundings when turning, parking and the like, by switching on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle.

The CORNER **function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.**

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note
The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 48 *on page 67*.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 34.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position AUTO » Fig. 47 *on page 66*.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The function is switched on (the driver's door is opened / the car is unlocked with the remote control).

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

- › Parking lights
- › Low beam
- › Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
- › Licence plate light

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted in the holder of the interior mirror sensor.

COMING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light **turns off** 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid or after the pre-set time has expired.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light **turns off** after 10 seconds or after a pre-set time or after the vehicle is locked.

If no door is opened, the vehicle is locked automatically after 30 seconds.

Enabling / disabling and setting function

The functions and settings of the illumination time can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu items **Coming Home** or **Leaving Home** » page 47.

! CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system

Fig. 49
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 49.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The parking light is provided for a temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Parking light P switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the control lever into position A or B as far as it can go » Fig. 46 *on page 65* - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 45 *on page 64* and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Instrument lighting

Fig. 50
Controls for the instrument lighting

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The brightness of the instrument lights can be set only if the parking, low beam or high beam is switched on.

Turning the knob » Fig. 50

Adjust brightness of the instrument lighting.

Note

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display » page 47 the brightness of the instrument lighting is set automatically. A manual brightness adjustment can therefore only have a limited effect.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The low beam is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), asymmetric headlight adjustment can dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the headlights with Xenon lights in the menu of the MAXI DOT display under the menu point **Travel mode** » page 47, *Settings*.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Note

With the ignition off, the light turns off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Front interior light

Fig. 51 **Operation of the front light: Version 1/version 2**

Positions of the rocker switch A . » Fig. 51

- Switching on
- Control with the door contact switch (middle position)
- 0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the center position (operation with the door contact switch) in Version 2.

Switch for reading lights B » Fig. 51

- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for operation of light with the door contact switch - setting

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is being opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior light

Fig. 52
Interior lights at the rear

The light is operated by moving the lens into one of the following positions » Fig. 52.

- Switching on
- Control with the door contact switch (middle position)[1)]
- 0 Switching off

[1)] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 70, *Front interior light*.

Front door warning light

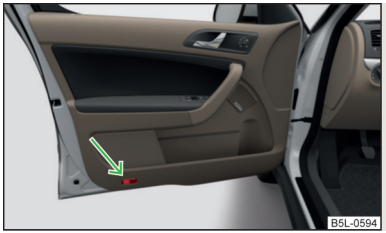

Fig. 53
Front door warning light

The warning light » Fig. 53 turns on when the front door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

In vehicles without a warning light only a reflector is installed at this point.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater

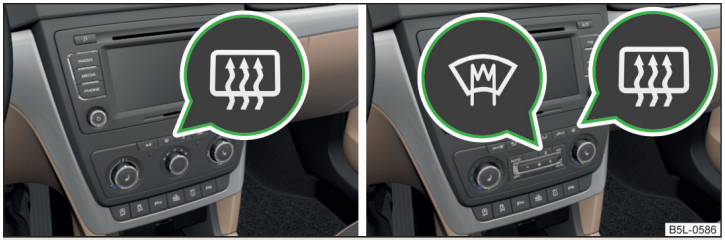

Fig. 54 **Buttons for the rear and front window heaters: manual air conditioning / Climatronic**

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

Buttons for the heater in the centre console » Fig. 54

- Switching the rear window heater on/off
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 190, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.
- The position and shape of the switch may vary according to the equipment fitted.

Sun visors in the front

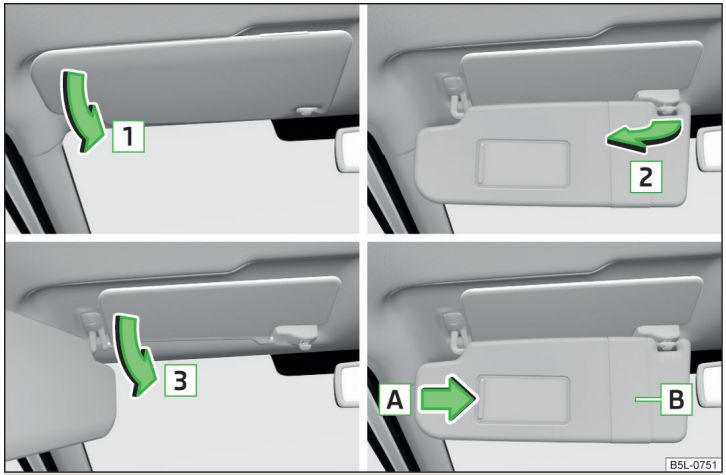

Fig. 55 **Fold down the cover / fold up cover / fold down secondary visor / make-up mirror and tape**

The sun visors protect you from the blazing sun.

Sun visors » Fig. 55

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
3 Fold down the auxiliary cover
A Make-up mirror, the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow
B Tape for storage of small light objects

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed[1].

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 186.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 212.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

[1] On vehicles which do not have a contact switch for the bonnet, the windshield wiper and wash system operates also when the bonnet is opened.

CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- To avoid streaking, the wiper blades must be kept clean » page 174.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

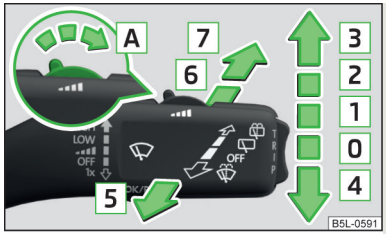

Fig. 56
Operation of the windscreen wipers and washer

Read and observe and on page 72 first.

Lever positions

0 OFF	Wipers off
1	Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain (depending on equipment)
2 LOW	Slow windscreen wiping
3 HIGH	Rapid windscreen wiping
4 1x	Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 212, (spring-loaded position)
5	Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
6	Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
7	Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
A	Switch for setting: the desired pause between the individual wiper strokes / the speed of the wiping in rain (operating lever in the position 1)

Intermittent windscreen wiping ....
The wiping intervals are also speed-dependent.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain ....
The wiping intervals are regulated depending on the rain intensity.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 3-4 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position** 6 » Fig. 56.

Automatic rear window wiping
If the lever is in position 2 or 3 » Fig. 56, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Rear wiper** » page 47.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 213.

Note

- If the operating lever is in the position 2 or 3 and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is switched to a lower wiping level. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
- The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting 5 » Fig. 56 *on page 73*), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 172, *Headlight glasses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION
Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

Interior mirror

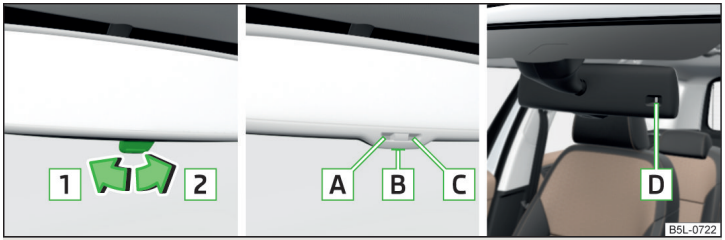

Fig. 57 **Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-dimming / light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 75 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 57

1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 57

A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor
D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the interior mirror » !.

WARNING

The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

CAUTION

Automatic mirror dimming only operates correctly if the light striking the sensor is not affected by other objects.

Note

If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Exterior mirrors

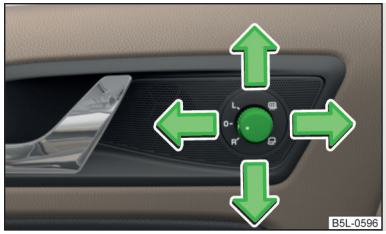

Fig. 58
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 75 first.

The knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater
Folding in the exterior mirrors

Adjust the position
The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 58.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror
› Activate the synchronous adjustment of the mirror above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror adjust.** » page 47, *Settings*.
› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Retract both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob
It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 15 km/h.

The mirrors are extended to the driving position by turning the dial from position to a new position.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key
› Close all windows.
› Press on the remote control key for about 2 seconds.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Mirror with automatic dimming
The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 75.

Memory function for mirrors
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 79, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 79, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Fold in passenger's mirror
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The passenger-side mirror can tilt down to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

The mirror will be retracted automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The function is activated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** » page 47, *Settings*.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The mirror setting has been previously stored » page 79, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 79, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

! WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

! CAUTION
▪ Never adjust retractable exterior mirrors by hand - risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
▪ When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note

- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and head restraints

Front seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following:

› Reaching the controls safely and quickly.
› A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
› **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is also functional when the ignition is turned off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
- Never carry more people than there are number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting seats

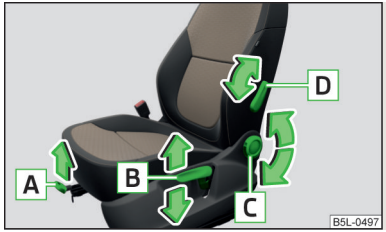

Fig. 59
Control elements at the seat

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 59

A Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
B Adjusting height of seat
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
D Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 59 in the direction of the arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push or pull the lever B » Fig. 59 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› The seat back release (do not lean on).
› Push the lever C » Fig. 59 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting lumbar support

› The lever D » Fig. 59 in direction of arrow.

Adjusting the front seats electronically

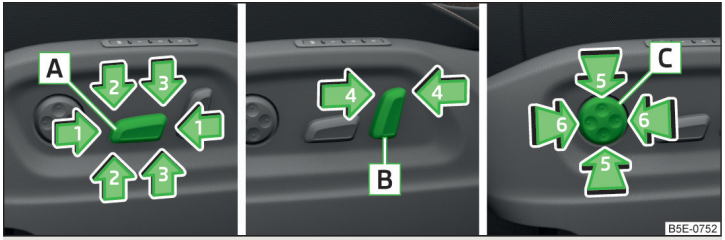

Fig. 60 **Control elements at the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 60

A seat adjustment
B Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
C Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 60.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 60.

Set the height of the seat cushion

› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **3** » Fig. 60.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Push the switch B in the direction of one of the arrows **4** » Fig. 60 .

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

› Push the switch C in the region of one of the arrows**5** » Fig. 60.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

› Push the switch C in the region of one of the arrows**6** » Fig. 60.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 79 or the remote control key » page 79.

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

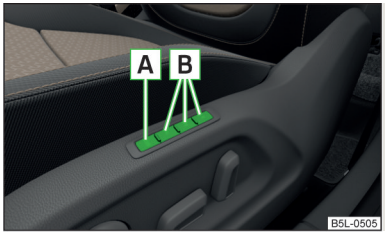

Fig. 61
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 61 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat to the desired position.
› Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 76.
› Press the SET button A » Fig. 61.
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgement sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

Above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** The lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side when reversing must be enabled » page 47.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 61.
› Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position R or in right-hand drive to the position L » page 76.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 76.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

The retrieval is possible when turned the ignition is switched on and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h or when the ignition key is inserted in the ignition lock.

› Press and hold the desired memory button B » Fig. 61 for a short while.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat.

Or

› Press the button on the remote control key.

Note

Each time you save the seat- and exterior mirror settings for forward travel you also have to re-save the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (afterwards only as function of automatic storage).

Enable automatic storage

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 61 *on page 79*. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key[1].

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** The lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side when reversing must be enabled » page 47.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position **R** or in right-hand drive to the position **L** » page 76.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 76.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold the SET button A » Fig. 61 *on page 79*. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat.

Or

› Press the button on the remote control key.

[1] The vehicle must be locked and unlocked with the same key to save the seat and exterior mirror position to the key.

Front seat functions

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heating

Fig. 62
Buttons for heating the front seats

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seat heater » Fig. 62

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

Switching on
› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 62.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If, as a passenger, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heating on the driver's or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heating in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
  - The seats are not occupied by people.
  - Items are fastened or stored items on the seats, such as a child seat, a bag and the like.
  - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 176.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 190, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

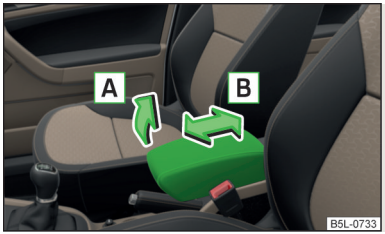

Fig. 63
Adjust armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting the height

› First of all, fold the armrest downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 63 to one of the 4 rest positions.

Move

› Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 63.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 92.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake.

Folding front passenger seat

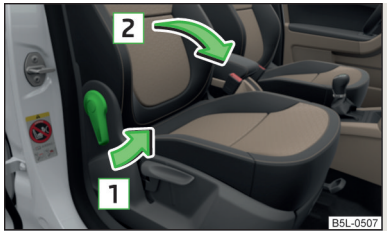

Fig. 64
Folding the front passenger seat forward

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 64.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 64.
› Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 22, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The head restraints and the front seats must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

WARNING

- With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be correctly set (may not be in the bottom position) - risk of fatal injury!
- With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be installed and adjusted correctly - risk of fatal injury!

Note

The position of the front and rear outer head restraints is adjustable in height. The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.

Adjusting, installing and removing the headrests.

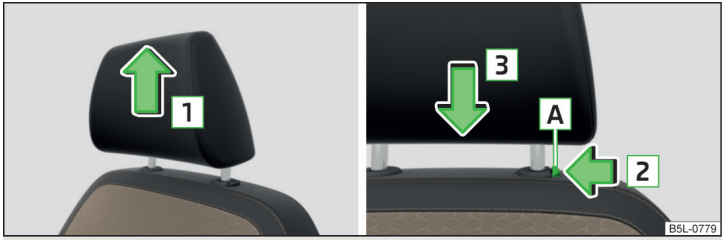

Fig. 65 **Head restraint: Move up / move down**

Read and observe ! on page 82 first.

Setting the height

› Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 65.
› To move the restraint **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold while at the same time pressing the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/installing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 65 and pull the head restraint out.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear centre head restraints

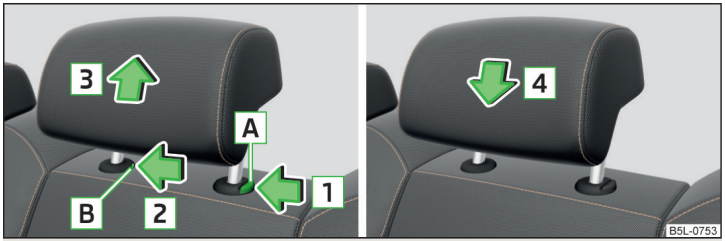

Fig. 66 **Rear center head restraint: remove / Install**

Read and observe ! on page 82 first.

Applies to vehicles using the TOP TETHER system.

Removing/installing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 66 , while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening B in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 4 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction

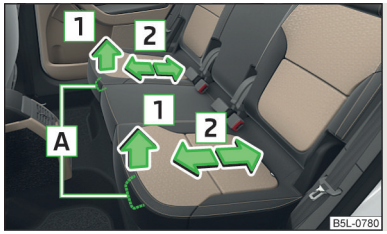

Fig. 67
Adjusting seats in forward/back direction

› Pull lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and move the seat to the desired position in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 67.

inclination of the seat backrest

Fig. 68 **Adjusting the seat backrest**

› Pull lever A on the lower portion in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 68.
› Adjust the desired inclination of the seat back in the direction of arrow 2.

! WARNING

Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.

Fold seat backrest forwards and fold down seat completely

Fig. 69 **Safety position of seat belt / folding the seat completely forward**

Fig. 70
Lock forward folded seats

Folding the seat backrest forwards

› Insert the seat belt buckle A » Fig. 69 in the hole in the side panel - security position.
› Remove the head restraint from the rear middle seat » page 83.
› Push the outer rear seats towards the rear as far as they will go » page 83, *Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction*.
› Pull the lever A » Fig. 68 *on page 83* and fold the seat backrests of the outer rear seats onto the seat cushion as far as the stop.
› Fold the middle rear seat backrest forwards in the same way, then pull once more on the lever A » Fig. 68 *on page 83* and press the seat backrest downwards until it is heard to lock into a lower position.

Folding seats fully forwards and locking them

› If the outer rear seat is fully folded forward, push it towards the rear as far as it can go.
› Pull the lever B » Fig. 69 in the direction of the arrow 1 and push the seat completely forward in the direction of arrow 2.
› Secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt B to a guide rod of the head restraint in the front seat » Fig. 70.

WARNING

- Immediately lock the folded forward seat to a guide rod on the front head restraint using the fixing belt - risk of injury.
- The following guidelines must be observed » page 9, *Correct seated position for the driver*.

CAUTION

- Before folding the rear middle seat forward, make sure that the storage compartment, the ashtray and the cup holder in the rear part of the centre console are closed - risk of damage.
- Only keep the seats in the folded forward position for as long as necessary to transport cargo - there is a risk of damaging the front seat backrests. The seats must be folded back once the cargo has been transported.
- If the outer seat is not in the rear end position when folding forward, damage can occur to the locking bolts when unlocking the seat.

Unlocking and removing seats

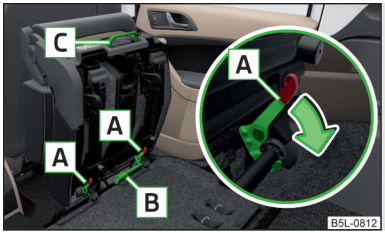

Fig. 71
Unlocking the folded forward seat and carrying handles on the seat surface

› Fold the seat forward » page 84, *Fold seat backrest forwards and fold down seat completely*.
› Unlock the folded seat by pressing seat locks A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 71.
› Remove the seat using the carrying handles B or C.

WARNING

The following guidelines must be observed » page 11, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.

Note

The outer seats are not mutually interchangeable. In the rear area the left seat is marked with the letter **L** and the right seat with the letter **R**.

Setting outer seat in the transverse direction

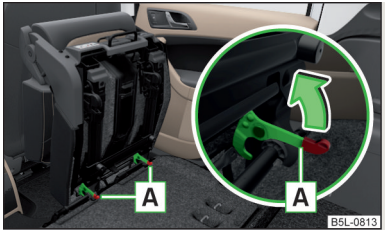

Fig. 72
Locking seats

› Remove the middle seat » page 84, *Unlocking and removing seats*.
› Fold the outer seat forwards » page 84 and unlock » Fig. 71 *on page 84*.
› Move the folded forward and unlocked seat on the guide towards the middle of the vehicle up to the stop.
› Lock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 72.

Folding back into the starting position is accomplished in the reverse order.

Folding rear seats back into the initial position

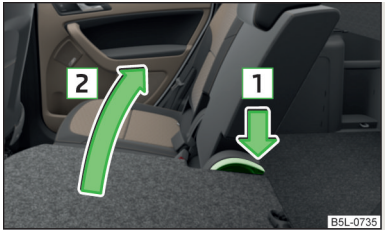

Fig. 73
Folding the seat backrest back into position

› If the seat has been removed, first position it on the guide and lock it in place using seat locking A » Fig. 72 *on page 85* .
› Pull the seat upwards to ensure that the seat is locked correctly.
› Fold the seat in the horizontal position until it can be heard to click.
› Check for yourself that the seat can no longer be lifted by pulling it up.
› Press the lever in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 73 and fold back the seat backrest to its original position in the direction of arrow 2.
› Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.
› Remove the tongue of the lock from the safety position.

WARNING

- The belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely engaged so that objects from the boot cannot slip into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury!
- When folding the seat backrest always make sure that it has safely locked into position, this is confirmed by the position and a visible marking on the cover of the lever.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

Fig. 74
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 74 is designed e.g. for securing car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the dash panel

Fig. 75
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Opening

› Press the button » Fig. 75.

The cover folds in the arrow direction.

Closing

› Fold back the storage compartment lid in the opposite direction to that of the arrow» Fig. 75 until it clicks.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid.

! WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.
- Do not put any highly inflammable objects or objects which are sensitive to heat (e.g. lighters, sprays, spectacles, carbonated drinks) in the storage compartment.

stowage compartments in the doors

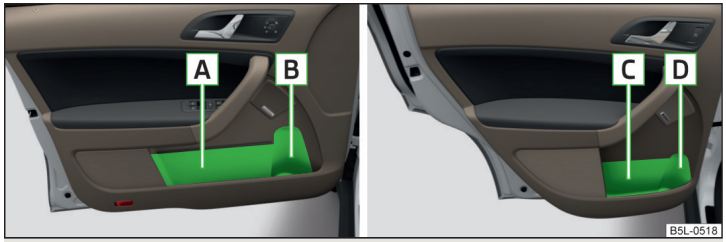

Fig. 76 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 76

A Storage compartment in the front doors
B Bottle holder with max. 1 liter capacity in the front doors
C Storage compartment in the rear doors
D Bottle compartment, max. capacity 0.5 l in the rear doors

! WARNING

Do not use the storage compartment A » Fig. 76 to store projecting objects. These could impair the effectiveness of the side airbag.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

Fig. 77
Non-lockable compartment

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The storage compartment » Fig. 77can be used to store small items.

Above the storage compartment the input marked with the MEDIA IN text MDI» page 127 input.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

Cup holders

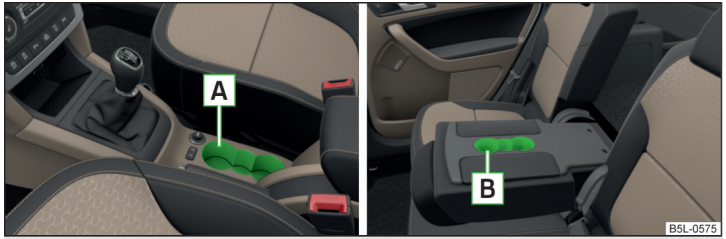

Fig. 78 **Cup holders: in the center console, front / on the folding table in the center backrest**

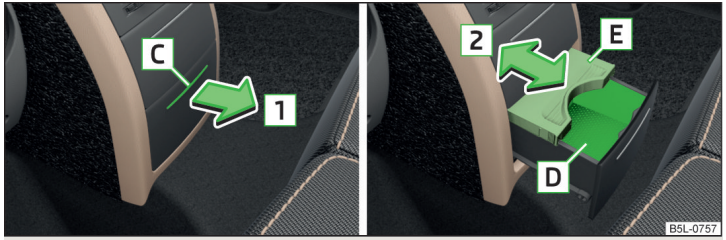

Fig. 79 **Open cup holder in the central console / adjust holder size**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Cup holders » Fig. 78 and » Fig. 79

A Cup holder in front centre console
B Cup holder on the folding table
C Location for opening
D Cup holder in rear centre console
E Fuse plate

Open holder in the rear center console

› Press in the cup holder in area C » Fig. 79.

The holder slides out.

› Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction 1.
› Adjust the bracket by sliding the locking plate E in the direction of arrow 2.

Close holder in the rear center console

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 79.

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- Before folding the rear center seat cup holder D » Fig. 79 must be closed - there is risk of damage.

Note

A 1.5 litre bottle (max. capacity) can be stored in the drinks holder D » Fig. 79.

Cigarette lighter

Fig. 80
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Using the system

› Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 80.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn » !.

! WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can case burns.

i Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12- volt socket for electrical appliances » page 90, *12-Volt power outlet*.

Ashtray

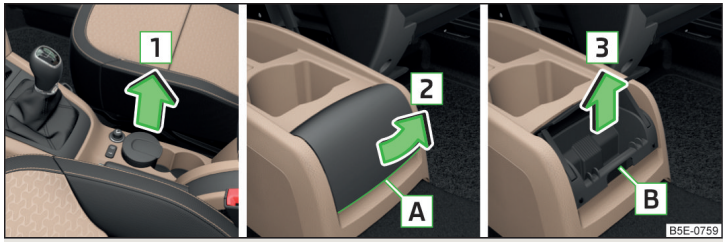

Fig. 81 **Low centre console: Remove front ashtray / open rear ashtray / remove rear ashtray**

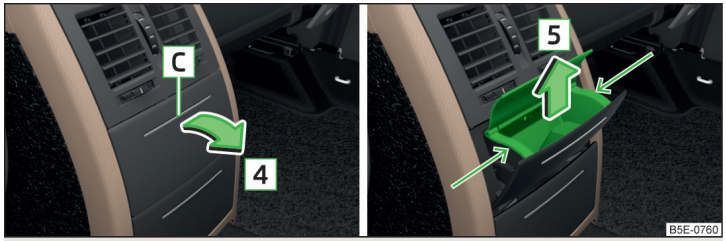

Fig. 82 **High centre console: Open rear ashtray / Removing rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› Remove the ashtray in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 81.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Opening the ashtray on the low centre console

› Grasp the ashtray cover at the lower edge A and fold it open in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 81.

Remove the ashtray from the low centre console

› Open the ashtray .
› Grasp the ashtray at the handle B and remove in direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 81.

Removing the ashtray from the low centre console

› Place the ashtray insert into the console and press it in.

Opening the ashtray on the high centre console

› Press in the cup holder in area C » Fig. 82.

The ashtray opens out in the direction of the arrow 4.

Removing the ashtray from the high centre console

› Open the ashtray .
› Press the cover carefully to the stop in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 82.
› Grasp the ashtray insert in the area of arrow and remove it in the direction of arrow 5.

Inserting the ashtray into the high centre console

› Place the ashtray insert into the receiver opposite the direction of arrow 5 and press.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

▪ When removing do not hold the ashtray at the cover on the front – risk of breakage.
▪ The ashtray in the rear part of the central console must be closed (otherwise it could get damaged) before folding forward the rear middle seat.

12-Volt power outlet

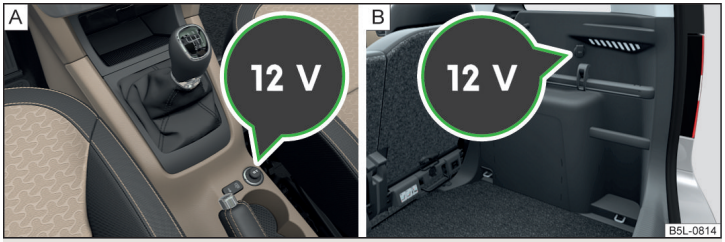

Fig. 83 **12-Volt power outlet in the front centre console / in the boot**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket » Fig. 83

A In the front centre console
B In the luggage compartment

Use

› Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 83 - A or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 83 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

WARNING

▪ Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
▪ If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

▪ The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
▪ Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.

▪ Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
▪ Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
▪ Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
▪ Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
▪ Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

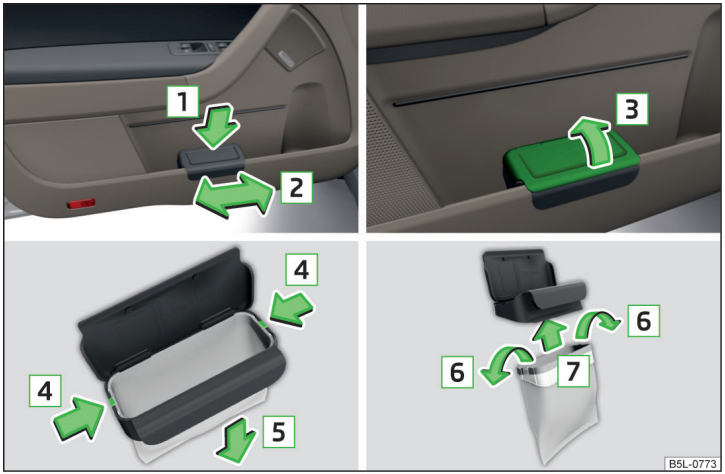

Fig. 84 **Waste container: insert and push / open / replace bag**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 87.

Insert waste container
› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 84.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow 2.

Remove the waste container
› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 84.

Open/close waste container
› Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 84.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags
› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 84.
› Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the inside frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

! WARNING
Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note
We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Storage compartment under the front arm rest

Fig. 85 **Open storage compartment / open air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Opening the storage compartment
› Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 85.

Closing storage compartment
› Open the armrest to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 85.

Open the air supply
› Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 85.

Close air supply
› Push the shutter against the arrow B to the stop » Fig. 85.

When the air inlet is opened, the air flows into the storage compartment with a temperature corresponding to the control dial settings on the A/C unit, depending on the outer climate conditions.

The air inlet in the storage compartment is connected to position through adjustment of the control dial for air distribution. This setting causes the maximum amount of air to flow into the storage compartment (depending on the rotary regulator position for the fan).

Note
If not using the air feed in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

storage net in the front centre console

Fig. 86
Storage net

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The storage net » Fig. 86 can be used for storage of e.g. maps, magazines etc.

WARNING
Only store soft objects with a total weight of 0.5 kg in the storage net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION
Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Glasses compartment

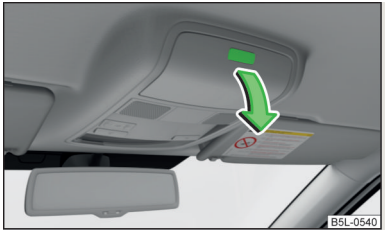

Fig. 87
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Opening
› Press the button » Fig. 87.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid on the storage box against the direction of the arrow» Fig. 87 until it is heard to lock.

WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles. Otherwise it must be kept closed.

CAUTION

- Do not place any heat-sensitive objects in the eyeglasses - risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

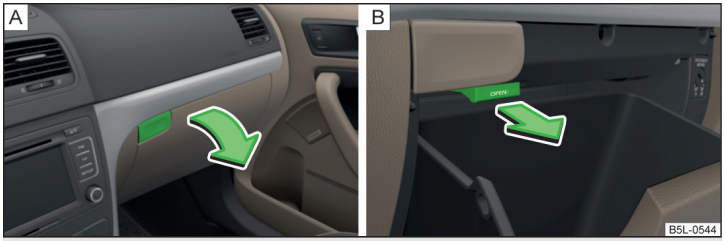

Fig. 88 **Open storage compartment / open air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Opening

› Press the button » Fig. 88 - A.

The cover folds in the arrow direction.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply into the storage compartment

› Open the air supply by pulling the lever to the stop in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88 - B.

› The air supply is closed by the lever being pushed to the stop against the direction of the arrow.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

- If not using the air feed in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.
- A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat

Fig. 89
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 89 in the direction of the arrow.

› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Close compartment (opposite to arrow direction) 2» Fig. 89 until you hear it click.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats

Fig. 90
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 90 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

Fig. 91
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Open/close

› Pull the top edge and open the compartment in the arrow direction » Fig. 91.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

Before folding forward, the rear center seat storage compartment must be closed - there is a risk of damage to the storage compartment.

Folding table on front seat backrest

Fig. 92
Fold down the folding table

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Folding up/folding down

› Fold the table into the horizontal position by pulling in the direction of arrow » Fig. 92.
› Pushing against the direction of the arrow folds the table back into the vertical position.

! WARNING

- The folding table must not be in the horizontal position while driving - risk of injury.
- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holder in the folding table - risk of scalding!
- Do not use any vessels made of brittle materials (e.g. glass, porcelain) - risk of injury.

! CAUTION

The folding table on the seat backrest of the front passenger seats is designed to hold smaller objects up to a maximum total weight of 10 kg.

folding table at the centre backrest

Fig. 93
Middle seat backrest already folded forward

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The centre seat back can be used after folding forwards » page 84, *Fold seat backrest forwards and fold down seat completely* as an armrest or table » Fig. 93 with cup holders by folding it forwards » Fig. 78 *on page 88*.

! CAUTION

If the middle rear seat backrest should be folded forward for lengthy periods, then make sure that the belt locks are not located below it - this can warp the upholstery or fabric.

Removable through-loading bag

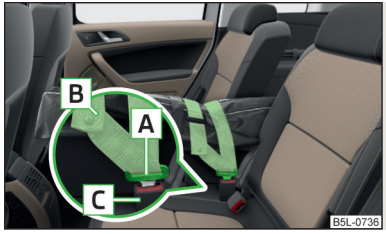

Fig. 94
Securing the removable through-loading bag

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to only as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Stowing through-loading bag and skis

› Open a rear side door of the vehicle.
› Fold the middle seat backrest forward » page 83, *Rear seats*.

› Place the empty through-loading bag in the gap between the front and rear seats in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip lies in the boot.
› Open the tailgate.
› Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing through-loading bag and skis

› Pull the securing belt with both lock tongues out of the pocket of the through-loading bag.
› Insert the lock tongues A » Fig. 94 in the belt locks of the rear middle seat belt C, first on the one side and then on the other side.
› Place the securing belt in the middle of the skis between the heel and the tip of the bindings and pull the securing belt tight at the free end of the belt B.

! WARNING

▪ After placing the skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the through-loading bag with the securing belt.
▪ The securing belt must hold the skis tight.
▪ Ensure that the securing belt for skis grasps the middle between the tip and the heel element of the binding (see also marking on the through-loading bag).
▪ The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 10 kg.

! CAUTION

▪ Never fold and stow the through-loading bag wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.
▪ The through-loading bag is designed to hold max. two pairs of skis.
▪ Place the skis and sticks in the through-loading bag with the tips facing to the rear.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets » page 97.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

! WARNING

▪ Always store transported objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
▪ Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
▪ Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
▪ Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
▪ If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.

WARNING (Continued)

- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 11, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats.*
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 191.

Fastening elements

Fig. 95 **Fasteners: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Overview of the fasteners » Fig. 95

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
B Fastening elements **only** for fastening fixing nets
C Mounting bar with integrated hooks **only** for fixing mounting networks.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes A is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

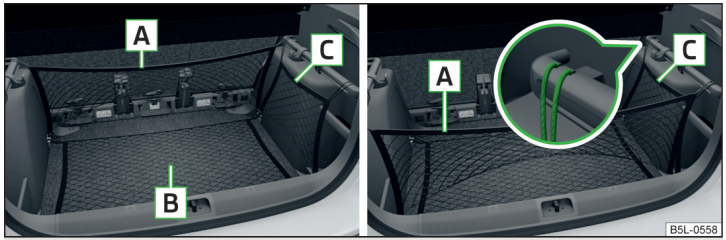

Fig. 96 **Fastening examples for nets**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 96

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Foldable hook

Fig. 97
Fold down hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Foldable hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided for each on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› Press on the lower portion of the hook A and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 97.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Fastening bar with sliding hook

Fig. 98 **Sliding hook on the mounting bar / removing hook**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

A fastening bar is located on both sides of the luggage compartment with two moveable hooks each, in order to attach small items of luggage, such as bags, etc. .

Moving the hook

› Fold up the hook in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 98 until an angle of approx. 45° is reached.
› Move the hook in the direction of the arrow 2 into the desired position and fold down the hook as far as the stop in direction of arrow 3.

Removing the hook

The hook can be removed only in the rear region of the attachment bar.

› Fold the hook in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 98 until it slackens.
› Remove the hook in the direction of the arrow 5.

Installing the hook

› Position the hook on the fastening strip in a vertical position in direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 98 and lightly press it on.
› Fold the hook down in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 until it locks fully.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of each hook is 7.5 kg.

Flexible storage compartment

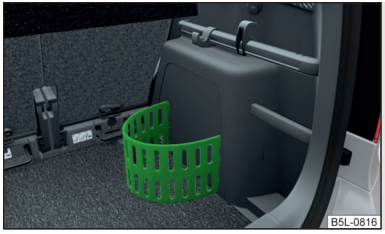

Fig. 99
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 99.

Fitting

› Place both ends of the storage compartment into the openings on the right side panel of the luggage compartment.
› Push the storage compartment down to lock it.

Removing

› Grasp the storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Press the upper corners inwards and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
› Remove the storage compartment by pulling towards you.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Note

The flexible storage compartment cannot be installed on vehicles with the variable loading floor » page 102.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe and on page 96 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage compartment cover

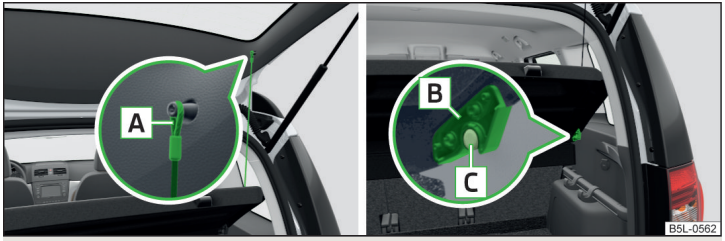

Fig. 100 **Secure luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe and on page 96 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

› Fold the seat backrests a little forward to make it easier to remove the luggage compartment cover » page 83, *inclination of the seat backrest*.
› Unhook the support straps A » Fig. 100 from the luggage compartment.
› Place the cover in the horizontal position.
› Pull the luggage compartment cover to the rear from the bolts C or pat on the bottom of the cover in the area of the C bolts.
› Fold the slackened front part of the boot cover over the head restraints of the rear seats.
› Slightly tilt the boot cover and remove it to the rear.

Fitting

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Position the mounts on the cover B » Fig. 100 onto the side trim panel via bolts C.
› Interlock the cover by lightly knocking on the top side of the cover in the area between the bolts.
› Hook the support straps A onto the tailgate.

WARNING

Do not place objects on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

CAUTION

After removing the luggage compartment cover, store it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Note

If the support straps A » Fig. 100 are attached to the boot, then the boot cover will rise as well when the luggage compartment is opened.

Net partition

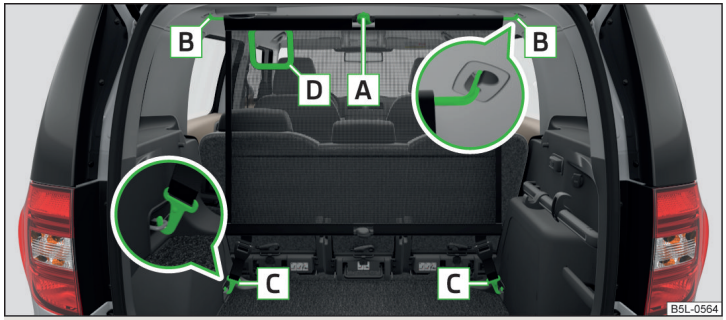

Fig. 101 **Using the net partition behind the rear seats**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Install behind the rear seats

› Remove the boot cover » page 99, *Luggage compartment cover*.
› Remove the net partition from the bag.
› Unfold both parts of the cross rod until they are heard to engage.
› First insert the rod into the mount B » Fig. 101 on one side and push it forwards. In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount B on the other side of the vehicle.
› Hang the carabines C at the ends of the strap into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the belts through the tensioning clasp.

Remove from behind the rear seats

› Undo the belts on both sides and unhook the carabiners C » Fig. 101.
› Push the cross rod first of all on the one side and then on the other side towards the rear.
› Remove the cross rod from the mounts B.

Merge

› Press the red button on hinge A » Fig. 101 - the hinge breaks.
› Put the net partition folded together in the bag and close it.
› Attach the bag with the aid of the plastic carabines to the eyes on the left and right boot trim panel.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats with variable loading floor is carried out in the same way as behind the rear seats without variable loading floor. Use the lower fixing eyes on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats is carried out in the same way as behind the rear seats. Use the lower fixing eyes on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines. To enlarge the boot, the rear seats can be removed » page 84.

The opening D » Fig. 101 in the net partition is designed to pass the three-point seat belt » page 15 through.

Storage compartments

Fig. 102 **Storage compartment on the left / right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The cover for the storage compartment A » Fig. 102 can be removed, thus enlarging the boot.

› Grasp the top part of the cover A and carefully remove it in the direction of the arrow.

! CAUTION

- The removable storage compartment A » Fig. 102 on the left side is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg.
- The storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 0.5 kg. in weight in total.

Removable storage box

Fig. 103
Storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The storage box » Fig. 103 is placed under the variable loading floor and can be taken out.

There is a storage space for the vehicle tool kit under the storage box » page 198, *Vehicle tool kit*.

! WARNING

The removable storage box must be located under the variable loading floor for the safe use of the variable loading floor.

Removable light

Fig. 104 **Light operation / removal**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The removable light is located on the right side of the luggage compartment.

If the light is in the holder, then part B » Fig. 104 is lit.

If the light is outside the holder, then the part A is lit.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. Therefore it is possible to attach the lamp, for example on the vehicle body, after removing it.

Remove the light from the holder

› Grasp the lamp in the areas of the arrow D » Fig. 104 and swivel it in the direction of the arrow 1.

Use of removed light

› If you press button C » Fig. 104 , the lamp lights up with 100 % light intensity.
› If you press button C again, the lamp lights up with 50 % light intensity.
› Press C button once again - the light goes out.

Reinserting the lamp the holder

› Switch off the ignition » !.
› First of all, place the deactivated light in the holder on the side facing the boot lid and then press on the light from the other side until it is clicks into place.

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type AAA batteries. The rechargeable batteries are constantly charged when the engine is running. It takes approx. 3 hours to fully charge the rechargeable batteries.

Replace batteries » page 211.

Luggage compartment light

If the light is in the holder, it is automatically **switched on** when the boot lid is opened.

If the lamp is in the holder, it is automatically **switched off** when the boot lid is closed.

! CAUTION

- If the lamp is not switched off and it is correctly inserted in the holder, the bulbs in the front part A » Fig. 104 of the lamp are automatically switched off.
- If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, it does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.
- The removable lamp is not watertight and must therefore be protected against moisture.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The variable loading floor makes it easier to handle bulky goods and creates an even boot floor when the rear seat backrests are folded forward.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

i Note

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.

Removing and inserting the variable loading floor

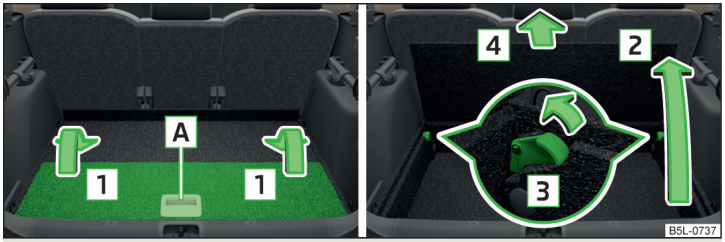

Fig. 105 **Fold up / removal variable loading floor**

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

› Fold the variable loading floor together using the handle A and fold in the direction of 1 » Fig. 105.
› Fold up the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull on both sides of the locking levers in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Securing the loading floor in the raised position

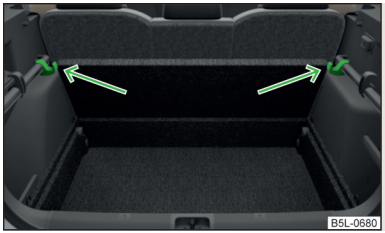

Fig. 106
Secured loading floor in the raised position

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

› Fold up the hooks on the fastening strip in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 98 *on page 98*.
› Fold up the variable loading floor behind the rear back backrests.

› Fold down the hooks in direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 98 *on page 98* as far as the stop.
› Support the variable loading floor on the hooks folded downwards » Fig. 106.

Removing and refitting carrier rails

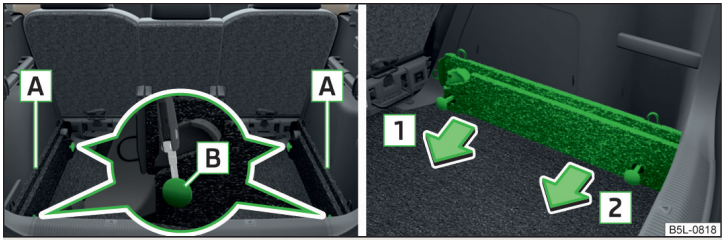

Fig. 107 **Slacken check points/remove carrier rails**

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

Removing

› Undo the securing points B » Fig. 107 on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver.
› Hold the carrier rail A in the front area and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 1.
› Hold the carrier rail A in the rear area and loosen and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 2.

Fitting

› Position the carrier rails on the sides of the boot.
› Press the two securing points B » Fig. 107 on each carrier rail to the stop.
› Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

! WARNING

Pay attention when installing the variable loading floor that the carrier rails and the variable loading floor are correctly fixed, otherwise the occupants are at risk.

Using the variable loading floor with a spare wheel

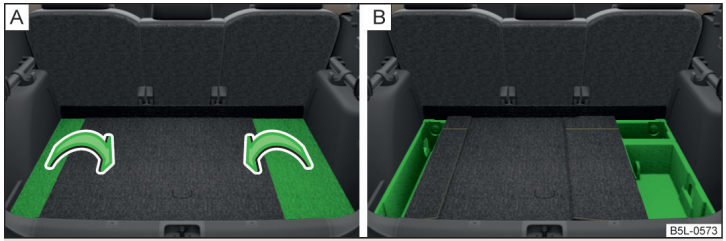

Fig. 108 **Fold up the side panels of the variable loading floor / space under the variable loading floor**

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

The sides of the variable loading floor can be folded in the direction of arrow » Fig. 108 - A.

The room under the variable loading floor » Fig. 108 - B can be used to stow objects.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.

WARNING (Continued)

- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On vehicles with a panoramic sunroof, make sure that the tilted panorama roof does not strike any items which are transported.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Roof load

Read and observe and on page 103 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **100 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met:

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 106.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
  - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
  - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
  - Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

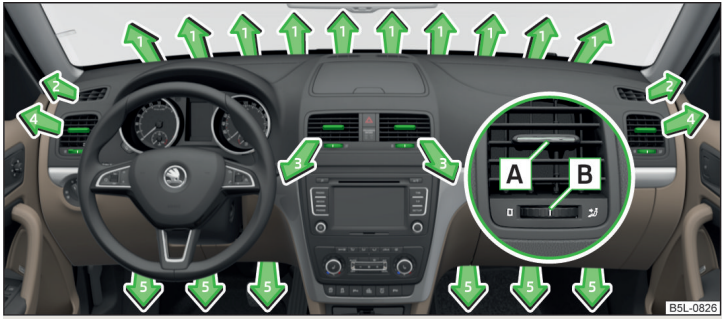

Fig. 109 **Air vents at the front**

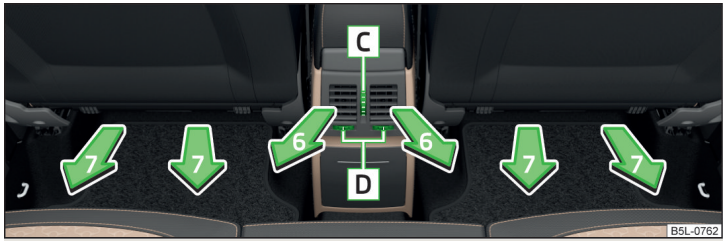

Fig. 110 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe and on page 104 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control dial and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 109 and **6** » Fig. 110 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Open the air outlet vents 3 and 4

› Turn the knob B to the position » Fig. 109.

Close air outlet vents 3 and 4

› Turn the knob B to the **0** » Fig. 109.

Open the air outlet vents 6

› Turn the knob C between the end positions » Fig. 110.

Close air outlet vents 6

› Turn the knob C to the end position » Fig. 110.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 3 and 4

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster A upward or downward » Fig. 109.

› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A to the left or to the right.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 6

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster A upward or downward » Fig. 110.

› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A to the left or to the right.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 109 and » Fig. 110
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6
	4, 5, 7

Note

- To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems work properly, do not block the air outlet vents.
- The air outlet vents **6** » Fig. 110 are only fitted on vehicles with the higher centre console.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, e.g. when driving through a tunnel or in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and air conditioning (manual air conditioning)
To turn the recirculation mode **on or off,** press the Symbol key .

The air recirculation mode is automatically turned off by turning the air distribution control C to position » Fig. 111 *on page 107* or » Fig. 112 *on page 107*.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)
To **turn the recirculation mode on,** press the Symbol key repeatedly until the indicator light is lit on the **left** side of the button.

To activate the automatic recirculation mode, press the Symbol key repeatedly until the indicator light is lit on the **right** side of the button.

Climatronic has an air quality sensor for the detection of the pollutant concentration in the sucked-in air.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched on.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

If the air quality sensor does not automatically switch on the recirculated air mode in the event of an unpleasant odour, you can switch it on yourself by pressing the button . The indicator light lights up in the button on the left side.

To **turn off the air recirculation** or **to deactivate the automatic air recirculations**, press the **AUTO** button of press the symbol button repeatedly until the warning lights in the button go out.

! WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

! CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Heating

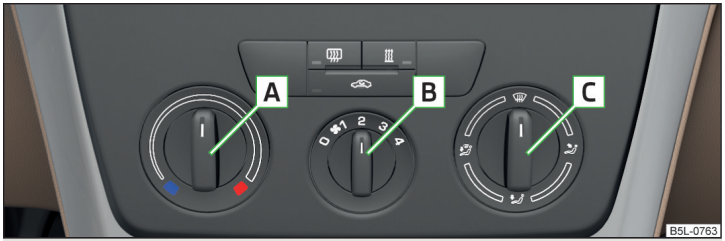

Fig. 111 **Heating Controls**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

Individual functions can be switched on or off by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. If the function is switched on, the warning light lights up.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 111

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower level (level 0: blower, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 105
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow to the windows and into the footwell

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 71

Switching on / off aux. heater (parking heater) on / off » page 111

Switch recirculation on/off » page 106

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

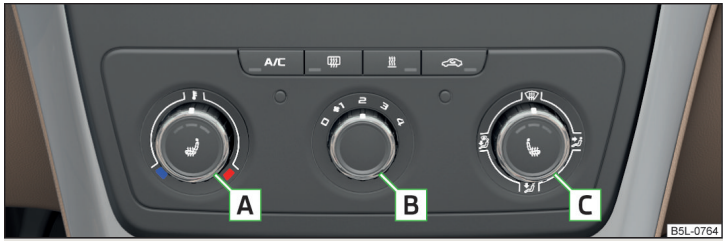

Fig. 112 **Controls of the air conditioning**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

Individual functions can be switched on or off by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. If the function in the button illuminates the warning light.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 112

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower level (level 0: Blowers, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 105
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow to the windows and into the footwell

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 71

Switching on/off aux. heater (parking heater) on/off » page 111

Switch recirculation on/off » page 106

Operation of the seat heater on the front left seat » page 80

Operation of the seat heater on the front right seat » page 80

Note

▪ The warning light in the button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. By lighting up of the indicator light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

▪ During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

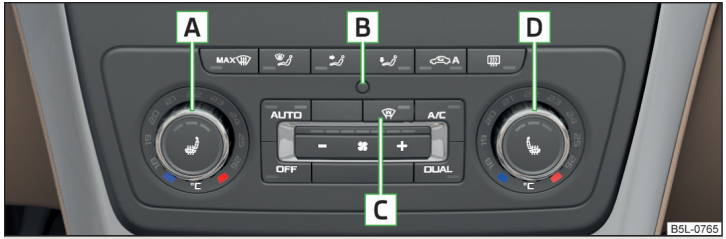

Fig. 113 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

Individual functions can be switched on or off by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. If the function in the button illuminates the warning light.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 113

A Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides
› Lower temperature
› Increase temperature

B Interior temperature sensor

C Depending on equipment fitted:
› Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 71
› Switching on/off aux. heating (standard heating) on/off » page 111

D Adjust the temperature for the right side
› Lower temperature
› Increase temperature

Operation of the seat heater on the front left seat » page 80

Operation of the seat heater on the front right seat » page 80

Adjust the blower speed
› + Increase speed
› - Reduce speed

MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off

Air flow to the windows

Air flow to the upper body

Air flow in the footwell

Automatic recirculation, switch on or off » page 106

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 71

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

OFF Switching Climatronic system off » !

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

The temperature **for both sides,** is set by turning the knob A » Fig. 113 (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is not illuminated).

The temperature **for the right side** is adjusted by turning the knob D (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The temperature **for the left side** is adjusted by turning the knob A (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +26 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +18 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale.

If a temperature higher than +26 °C is selected, the symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Controlling blower
The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the symbol button when the respective number of indicator lights come on.

Automatic mode
The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH"-mode. The "HIGH" mode is the standard setting of the Climatronic.

Upon pressing the **AUTO** button again, the Climatronic switches to "LOW"-mode and the indicator light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button **AUTO** again, it is changed to "HIGH"-mode.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Note
- Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor B » Fig. 113 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.
- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- For vehicles with factory-fitted radio the Climatronic information also appears on its display. This function can be switched off, see » *Radio manual*.

Efficient handling of the cooling system

Read and observe and on page 104 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment
Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 140.

malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 104 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.
› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 214.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 31.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Conditions for the functioning of auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heater functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine.

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. This heats the air flowing into the passenger compartment (if the blower is turned on).

The heater is switched on or off **automatically** depending on the ambient conditions to give the best possible conditions for the engine running and the interior heating.

For vehicles with gasoline engines, the automatic switching on and off of the heater can be disabled in a specialist workshop.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the heater, do not switch off the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. -. risk of fire.

CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heater consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heating switches off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on and off directly

Fig. 114 **Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

The auxiliary heating can be **directly** switched on or off at any time using the button ⧆ » Fig. 114 on the operating part of the air-conditioning system , on the operating part of the Climatronic system or via the radio remote control » page 111.

If the auxiliary heating has not already been switched off, it switches off automatically after the running time set in the **Running time** menu.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump still runs for a short period.

System settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Aux. heating** menu item in the MAXI DOT display (depending on the vehicle equipment).

- **Day of the wk.** - set the current day of the week
- **Running time** - Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
- **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode
- **Starting time 1**, **Starting time 2**, **Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
- **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode
- **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode
- **Factory settings** - Restore factory settings
- **Back** - return to main menu.

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating activates at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the pre-set menu is closed by selecting the **Back** menu item or if no changes are made on the display for more than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

An indicator light on the button ⧆ is illuminated when the system is running.

The running system deactivates after expiration of the operating period or can be deactivated earlier by pressing the button to directly switch on/off the auxiliary heating ⧆ or by using the radio remote control.

Radio remote control

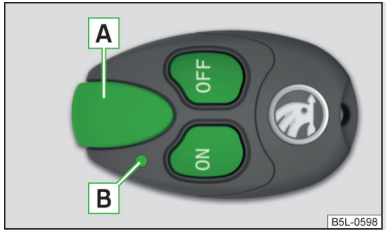

Fig. 115
Radio remote control of the auxiliary heating

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

Radio remote control » Fig. 115

A Aerial
B Warning light
ON Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial A » Fig. 115 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback.

Display warning light B » Fig. 115	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 210.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Communication and multimedia

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Validity of the information

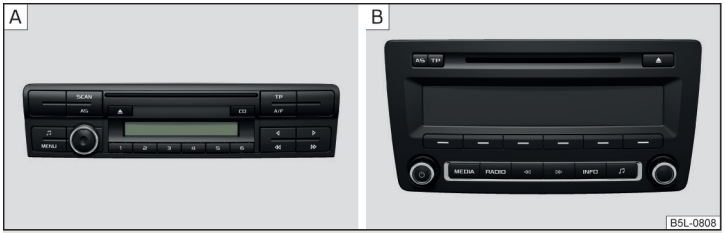

Fig. 116 **Radio Blues / Radio Swing**

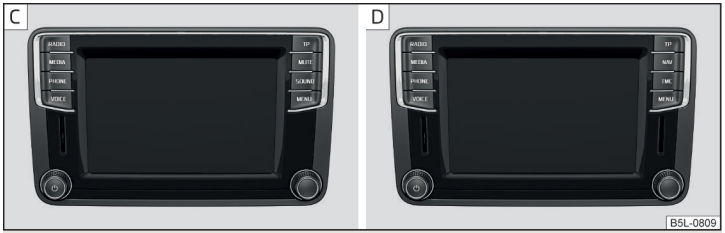

Fig. 117 **Infotainment radio Bolero / Infotainment navigation Amundsen**

The functions described in the following sections apply only to vehicles with Radio Blues » Fig. 116- A or Swing » Fig. 116 - B.

This applies to the following chapters.

› Universal telephone installation kit (hands free) » page 114
› Universal phone installation kit GSM II » page 116
› Universal phone installation kit GSM III » page 118
› WLAN » page 122
› Voice activation » page 123
› Multimedia » page 125

The functions of radio Bolero » Fig. 117- C or Amundsen navigation » Fig. 117- D can be found in the respective infotainment manuals.

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please ask at a specialist workshop about installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems that have a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The possible reasons for this are:

› No external aerial.
› External aerial incorrectly installed.
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

! WARNING

- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Do not attach objects such as mobile telephone holders, etc. to the covers of the airbag modules or within their immediate vicinity.
- Never leave a telephone in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury.
- Before transport of the vehicle by air, the Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company.

Universal telephone preinstallation (hands free)

Introduction

This chapter applies only to vehicles with universal phone installation kit GSM II or GSM III.

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Only use the hands-free system to the extent that you are in full control of your vehicle in any traffic situation.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.

CAUTION

- In areas with no signal and sometimes in tunnels, garages or subways telephone conversations can be interrupted and telephone connections cannot be established - even in an emergency!
- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a specialist garage.

Note

- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II or GSM III. Ask a ŠKODA partner or visit the ŠKODA website **www.infotainment.skoda-auto.com** to find out whether your phone is compatible with universal telephone installation kit GSM II or GSM III.
- The range of the telephone connection to the device using the Bluetooth® profile is limited to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your telephone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the device or transferring data.
- The functionality of the telephone is dependent on the telephone service operator and the telephone being used. Further information is available from the telephone service operator or can be found in the telephone manual.
- In some countries the connection via the Bluetooth ® function, may be limited. Further information can be obtained from local authorities.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

Fig. 118 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

There are buttons in the steering wheel for easy operation of the basic functions of the phone » Fig. 118 so that the driver is distracted from the traffic as little as possible when using the phone.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation at the factory.

The buttons operate the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button / dial » Fig. 118	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	MUTE 🔇)
1	Turn upwards	Increase volume
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume
2	Press briefly	Accept a call/end a call Display of the basic phone menu → Main Phone menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press and hold button	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press and hold button	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
4	Press and hold button	Exit telephone menu

Symbols in the MAXI DOT display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

Symbol	Importance	Valid for
	Charge status of the telephone battery[a)]	GSM II, GSM III
	Signal strength[a)]	GSM II, GSM III
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system	GSM II, GSM III
3G	A UMTS network is available	GSM III
	Internet connection via the hands-free system	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile

a) This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Phone Phonebook

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the telephone's first connection to the hands-free system, the phone book from the phone and the SIM card loads into the hands-free memory.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this period, the available phone book is the one stored at the previous update. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

GSM II
The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

GSM III
The internal phonebook provides 2 000 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 5 numbers.

If the mobile phone's telephone book has more than 2,000 contacts, the following message will appear in the MAXI DOTdisplay:

Phone book not fully loaded

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

Only vehicles with Blues or Swing radios can have the GSM II universal phone installation kit.

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The GSM II universal phone pre-installation offers comfort controls of the mobile phone via the multifunction steering wheel or the factory installed voice command system.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
- Phone Phonebook » page 116.
- Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 114.
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 117.
- Voice control of the telephone » page 123.
- Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 125.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology.

Note
The following guidelines must be observed » page 113, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

- Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
› To finish pairing in the MAXI DOT display, confirm the creation of the new user profile.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the pairing process, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system
If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be reestablished for 3 minutes in the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› In the MAXI DOT display under menu item **Bluetooth** - **Visibility**.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[2]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting from the user in the MAXI DOT display under the menu item **Bluetooth** - **User**.

Solving connection problems
If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**
- **Call register**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**
- **Settings**
- **Back**

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+**, **✳**, **#** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions. ▸

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

Call register
The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled numbers** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls** - list of received calls

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number.

Bluetooth
The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Connected devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Search** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings
The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Update the phone book
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **Surname** - Sorted by contact name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back
Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III

Introduction

Only vehicles with the Blues and Swing radios can have the GSM II universal phone installation kit.

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The GSM II universal phone installation kit offers comfort controls of the mobile phone via the multifunction steering wheel or the factory installed voice command system.

The universal telephone pre-installation GSM III comprises the following functions.
› Phone Phonebook » page 116.
› Convenience operation via the multifunction steering wheel » page 114.
› Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 119.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 123.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 125.
› Internet connection » page 121.
› Display of SMS messages » page 120.

All communication between a telephone and the hands-free system of your vehicle can only be established with the help of the following profiles of Bluetooth® technology.

rSAP - Remote SIM access profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **rSAP** profile, the telephone deregisters from the GSM network, and communication with the network is only enabled by the hands-free system via the vehicle's external aerial. In the telephone only the interface for Bluetooth® remains active. In this case, you can only use the mobile phone to disconnect from the hands-free system, deactivate the Bluetooth® connection or dial the emergency number 112 (only valid in some countries).

HFP - Hands Free Profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **HFP** profile, the telephone continues to use its GMS module and the internal antenna to communicate with the GSM network.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 113, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, it is necessary to interconnect the telephone and hands-free system. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone. The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the rSAP profile

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone. For certain mobile phones it is necessary to switch on first the **rSAP** function.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If your SIM card is blocked by a PIN code, enter the PIN code for the SIM card in your phone. The telephone connects to the hands-free system (during the first connection you can only enter the PIN code in the MAXI DOT display when the vehicle is stationary, as this is the only situation when you can choose whether the PIN code should be stored).
› To save a new user, follow the instructions in the Maxi DOT display.
› Reconfirm the **rSAP** command on your mobile phone to download the telephone book and the identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the HPP profile

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› Follow the instructions on the MAXI DOT display and the mobile phone to store a new user or to download the telephone book and identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

The telephone primarily connects via the **rSAP** profile.

If the PIN code was stored, the telephone is automatically detected and connected with the hands-free system the next time the ignition is switched on. Check your mobile phone to see whether this automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection

› By removing the key from the ignition lock (the connection is disconnected during a telephone call).
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› Select the user by disconnecting the user in the Maxi DOT display in the **Bluetooth** - **User** menu option - **Disconnect**.

Note

- In the memory of the hands-free system, up to three users can be stored, whereby the hands-free system can only communicate actively with one user. If a connection is established with a fourth mobile phone, one of the users must be deleted.
- When connecting to the hands-free system, follow the instructions on your mobile phone.

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

If no phone is connected to the hands-free system, the message **No paired phone found** appears along with the following menu items when the **Phone** menu is selected.

- **Help** - This menu item appears when no paired phone is stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **Connect** - This menu item appears when one or more paired phones are stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **New user** - New phone

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) will either be displayed, or a 16-digit code displayed in the MAXI DOTdisplay will need to be entered into your mobile phone and confirmed within 30 seconds by following the instructions on your mobile phone display.

- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Connected devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Search** - Device search
  - **Visibility** - Visibility on/off
- **SOS** - Emergency call

If a telephone is paired with the hands-free system, the following menu items can be selected in the **Phone** menu.

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

The following functions are available for each phone contact.

- Display a phone number
- **Voice tag** - Voice tag for the contact
  - **Play** - Play a voice tag
  - **Record** - Record a voice contact

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Delete**, **Call** and **Back** functions.

Call register
The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Received calls** - list of received calls
- **Dialled numbers** - List of dialled numbers
- **Delete lists** - Delete call registers

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set or save the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Delete**, **Call**, **Store** and **Back** functions.

Messages[1)]
A list of received text messages is displayed in the **Messages** menu item. After calling a message, the following functions appear.
- **Show** - Display text message
- **Read** - The system reads out the selected text message through the vehicle's speakers
- **Send time** - Display message send time
- **Callback** - Dial the phone number of the sender of the text message
- **Copy** - Copy the received text message to the SIM card
- **Delete** - Delete the message

Bluetooth
The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
  - **Connect** - Connection with the telephone
  - **Disconnect** - Disconnection of telephone
  - **Rename** - Rename the telephone
  - **Delete** - Delete the telephone
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Connected devices** - List of paired devices
    - **Connect** - Connection with the device
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Delete** - Delete the device
    - **Authorisation** - Authorise the device
  - **Search** - Search for available media players
  - **Visibility** - Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for media players in the vicinity
- **Modem** - overview of the active and paired devices for the connection to the internet
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Connected devices** - List of paired devices
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi menu item» page 123, *Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display*.

[1)] Only applies when connecting the telephone to the hands-free system via the rSAP profile.

Settings
The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Import phone book
  - **Select memory** - Select memory with phone contacts
    - **SIM & phone** - Download the contacts of the SIM card and the phone
    - **SIM card** - Download the contacts from the SIM card
    - **Phone** - Initial setting to also import contacts from the SIM card; it is necessary to switch to the **SIM & phone** menu item
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
- **Own number** - Optionally display your own telephone number on the display of the device of the person you are calling (this function is network-dependent)
  - **Network depnd.** - Network-dependent own number display
  - **Yes** - Allow display of your own number
  - **No** - Prohibit display of your own number
- **Signal settings** - Signal settings
  - **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting
  - **Volume** - Signal volume settings
    - **Turn vol. up** - Increase volume
    - **Turn vol. down** - Decrease volume
- **Phone settings** - Phone settings
  - **Select operator** - Select operator
    - **Automatic** - Automatic operator selection
    - **Manual** - Manual operator selection
  - **Network mode** - Network mode
    - **UMTS** - UMTS
    - **GSM** - GSM
    - **Automatic** - automatic
  - **SIM mode** - Applies to telephones with the rSAP profile that simultaneously support the operation of two SIM cards - there is an option to choose which SIM card to connect to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 1** - SIM 1 is connected to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 2** - SIM 2 is connected to the hands-free system
  - **Phone mode** - Toggle between rSAP and HFP mode
    - **Premium** - rSAP mode
    - **Hands-free** - HFP mode
  - **Off time** - Set the off time in increments of 5 min
  - **Access point** - Set the Internet access point
    - **APN** - Change the access point name
    - **User name** - User Name
    - **Password** - Password
  - **Switch off ph.** - Switch off the hands-free system (the mobile phone remains paired)

Back
Return to the main menu in the MAXI DOT display.

Internet connection via Bluetooth®

A notebook can, for example, be connected to the Internet via the hands-free system.

The control unit of the hands-free system supports the GPRS, EDGE and UMTS/3G technologies.

An Internet can only be established via a telephone which is connected via the rSAP profile.

The procedure for connecting to the Internet can vary depending on the type and version of the operating system as well as the type of the device to be connected. Successfully connecting to the internet requires appropriate knowledge of the operating system for connecting the device .

Call sequence
› Connect the mobile phone with the hands-free system .
› Set the access point in the **Phone** - **Settings** - **Access point** menu (depending on the operator, usually "Internet").
› Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu.
› Use the device that is to be connected to search for available Bluetooth® devices.
› Select the hands-free system (as standard "SKODA_BT") from the list of found devices.
› Enter the password on the device being connected and follow any instructions given on this device or in the MAXI DOTdisplay.
› Enter the desired Internet address in the Internet browser. The operating system requests the entry of the telephone number for the internet access (depending on the operator, usually "*99#").

Wi-Fi

Introduction

This chapter applies only to vehicles with the GSM III universal telephone installation kit.

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WLAN (also Wi-Fi) is a wireless network for connecting to the Internet.

Using a mobile phone connected with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile, it is possible to establish a Wi-Fi network in the vehicle and to enable passengers with compatible devices to connect to this network.

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off

Switching on

› Connect the mobile phone with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile » page 119.
› Select the **Wi-Fi** menu item in the **Phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Swith on Wi-Fi?*?

› Select the **Yes** menu item.

If no access point[1)] is assigned automatically, then this must be entered manually as per the instructions from the mobile network operator, e.g. "Internet".

If the Wi-Fi network is switched on, the display will show the following message, for example: **WLAN SK_WLAN 1234 switched on.**

The display then shows a password for the Wi-Fi network connection. The password can subsequently be found in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If no data connection via WLAN is available, the display will show the message **Data connection not available.**. This can be caused by a weak GSM signal, for example. Try to establish the connection again at a location with stronger signal reception.

Switching off

› Select the **Wi-Fi** - **Off** menu item in the **Phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch off Wi-Fi?*

› Select the **OK** menu item.

The display shows the message *Wi-Fi switch off.*

Connecting an external device to the WLAN network

Connecting using the Wi-Fi network search

› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 122, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› On the device to be connected, search for available WLAN networks (Wi-Fi) - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.
› Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network connection in the menu of the networks found (e.g. **Wi-Fi SK_WLAN 1234**).

If menu item **WPA2** is set in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, then the password displayed when the Wi-Fi is switched on must be entered in the device to be connected. The password can be found in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If menu item **Open** is set in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, the connection is made automatically.

Connecting using WPS (service for easy connection)

› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 122, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› Open the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **WPS config.** menu in the instrument cluster.
› In the device to be connected, select the connection using WPS function - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.

If the **Pushbutton** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, the Wi-Fi connection is made automatically.

If the **WPS PIN** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, then a PIN must be entered in the device to be connected and the instrument cluster.

[1)] The name of the access point is defined by the mobile operator.

Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display

When a Wi-Fi network is switched on, the following menu items are displayed when the **Wi-Fi** menu item is selected:

- **Off** - Switch off the WLAN network (depending on the context)
- **Device list** - Display a list of external devices
  - **Active device** - Display a list of active devices
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Known devices** - Display list of known devices
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Device blocked** - Display list of blocked devices
    - **Unblock** - Remove the connection block
  - **Delete lists** - Delete device lists
    - **Known devices** - Delete list of known devices
    - **Device blocked** - Delete list of blocked devices
    - **Both lists** - Delete both device lists
- **Password** - Use of password to log on to the WLAN network
  - **Show** - Display a password to log on to the WLAN network
  - **Generate** - Generate a new password to log on to the WLAN network
- **Wi-Fi Name** - Use of WLAN network name
  - **Show** - Display the WLAN network name
  - **Rename** - Rename the WLAN network
- **WPS config.** - Wi-Fi network connection using WPS
  - **Pushbutton** - Automatic connection
  - **WPS PIN** - PIN entry for the connection
- **Data counter** - Display information about the volume of data transferred
  - **Current connection** - display of the volume of data transferred during the current connection
  - **Total** - Display of the total volume of data transferred
  - **Reset** - Resetting of the information about the volume of data transferred
- **Settings** - WLAN network settings
  - **Access point** - Access point settings
    - **Settings** - Access point management
      - **APN** - Change the access point name
      - **User name** - User Name
      - **Password** - Password
    - **Reset** - Reset access point factory settings
  - **Prioritisation** - Set the connection priority
    - **Calls** - Set the connection priority for calls
    - **Data** - Set the connection priority for data transfer
  - **Encryption**- Set the encryption
    - **WPA2** - Enable WPA 2 encryption
    - **Open** - No encryption
  - **Visibility** - Set the WLAN network visibility
    - **Visible** - WLAN network is visible to other devices
    - **Invisible** - WLAN network is not visible to other devices
  - **Data roaming** - Set the data roaming
    - **No roaming** - Data roaming is not allowed
    - **Allow** - Data roaming is allowed
    - **Always ask** - Question setting for data roaming
  - **Wi-Fi Channel** - Select WLAN network channels (preferably set to channel 11)
    - **Channel 1** ... **Channel 11** - Display the WLAN network channels
  - **Reset** - Reset Wi-Fi network factory settings

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter applies only to vehicles with the GSM II or GSM III universal phone installation kit.

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue

Fig. 119
Multifunction steering wheel

The voice command system (hereinafter referred to only as a system) allows some functions of the GSM II or III GSM universal phone installation kit to be operated via voice commands.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
› Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
› Avoid a bad pronunciation.
› Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
› You are recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
› During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
› Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Activating voice control - GSM II
By briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 119 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Deactivating voice control - GSM II
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by briefly pressing button 1 » Fig. 119 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself as follows.
› With the voice command **CANCEL**.
› By briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 119 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Activating voice control - GSM III
The dialogue can be started at any time by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 119 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Deactivating voice control - GSM III
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 119 on the multi-function steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself as follows.
› With the voice command **CANCEL**.
› By briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 119 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note
The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.

Voice commands - GSM II

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.

Voice command	Action
MUSIC	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Pardon?**", and a new entry can be made. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd attempt the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice command in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Voice commands - GSM III

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL NAME	After this command, a name can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	The last selected telephone number is selected.
READ ADDRESSBOOK	The system reads out contacts from the telephone book.
READ MESSAGES	The system reads the messages which were received while the telephone was connected to the control unit.
SHORT DIALOGUE	The help is significantly reduced (good operating knowledge provided).
LONG DIALOGUE	The help is not reduced (suitable for beginners).
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

If the system does not recognise the command, it repeats the first part of the help thus enabling a new entry to be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the second part of the aid. After the 3rd attempt the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice command in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth®

This chapter applies only to vehicles with the GSM II or GSM III universal phone installation kit.

The universal telephone preinstallation makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from devices such as MP3 players, mobile phones or notebooks.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The GSM II universal telephone installation kit allows music played back via the hands-free system to be controlled via voice command » page 124, *Voice commands - GSM II*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and audio sources from the multifunction steering wheel

The following information applies only for vehicles with Blues and Swing.radios.

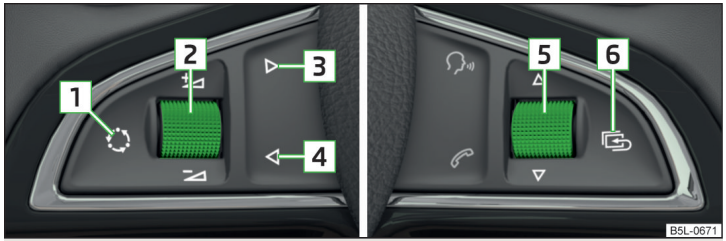

Fig. 120 **Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons**

The multifunction steering wheel has buttons/dials for operating the basic functions of factory-fitted radio » Fig. 120.

The radio can of course still be operated on the device. Operating instructions can be found in the manual of the Blues A or Swing B » Fig. 116 *on page 113*radios

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons / dials control the functions for the prevailing operating mode of the telephone.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button / dial » Fig. 120	Action	Radio	Audio sources
1	Press	changing the audio source	
2	Press	Switch sound on/off (MUTE 🔇)	
2	Turn upwards	Increase volume	
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume	
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track
		Stop traffic report	
3	Press and hold button	Without function	Fast forward
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a)]
		Stop traffic report	
4	Press and hold button	Without function	Fast rewind
5	Turn upwards	Switch to previous channel and display list of stored / accessible channels	Skip to next track

Button / dial » Fig. 120	Action	Radio	Audio sources
5	Turn downwards	Switch to previous channel and display list of stored / accessible channels	Switch to start of track[a]
6	Press briefly	Call up the main menu	

[a] To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

AUX, USB and MDI inputs

Fig. 121
AUX input under the armrest

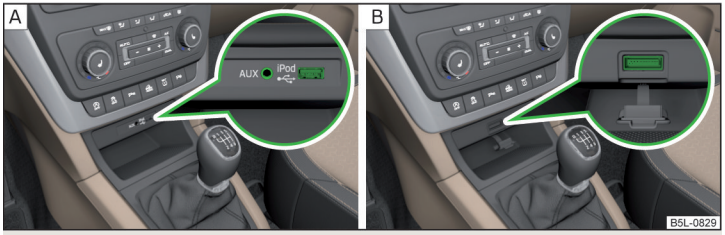

Fig. 122 **AUX, USB and MDI inputs**

Depending on the equipment, your vehicle may have AUX- USB- or MDI inputs for connecting external sources.

The inputs are used to connect external devices (e.g. iPod, MP3 player, etc.) and for music playback from these devices via the factory-fitted radio.

Extension cables to connect external sources are available from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

For operating instructions, refer to the relevant operating manuals for the radio or navigation system.

AUX input
For vehicles with AUX input they can be found at one of the following locations, depending on the vehicle equipment.
› Under the armrest » Fig. 121.
› Above the storage box of the front centre console » Fig. 122 – A.

The AUX input is labelled with the text **AUX** .

Audio devices can be connected at the input via the standard 3.5 mm jack (Stereo Jack).

USB input
If vehicles are equipped with the USB input, this will be located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 122 - A.

The USB input is marked with **iPod** and the symbol ⇠ .

USB devices (such as memory sources) can be connected to the input. The connection of Apple devices is also supported.

Multi-Device Interface (MDI) input
If vehicles are equipped with a MDI input, this will be located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 122 - B.

The MDI input cover is marked **MEDIA IN** .

Apple devices can be connected at the input.

CD change

The following information applies only for vehicles with Blues and Swing.radios.

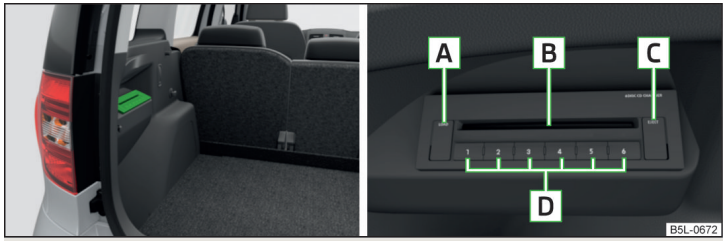

Fig. 123 **The CD changer**

The CD changer for the radio is located in the left side trim panel of the boot.

Inserting the CD

› Touch the button C » Fig. 123 and guide the CD (compact disc) into the CD-case B. The CD is automatically loaded onto the lowest free position in the CD changer. The indicator light in the corresponding button D stops flashing.

Filling the CD changer with CDs

› Press and hold the button C » Fig. 123 for longer than 2 seconds and guide the CDs one after the other (maximum 6 CDs) into the CD case B. The indicator lights in the buttons D stop flashing.

Inserting a CD at a specific position

› Press the button C » Fig. 123. The indicator lights in the buttons D illuminate the memory spaces that are already assigned and flash in the case of free memory spaces.
› Touch the desired button D and guide the CD into the CD-case B.

Ejecting a CD

› Press button A » Fig. 123. For assigned memory spaces, the indicator lights now illuminate in the buttons D.
› Press the corresponding button D. The CD is ejected.

Ejecting all CDs

› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 123 for more than 2 seconds. All CDs in the CD-changer are ejected consecutively.

Note

- Insert a CD, with the labelled side facing up, into the CD slot B » Fig. 123 until it is automatically drawn in. The play function will start automatically.
- After loading a CD into the CD changer, wait until the indicator light of the corresponding button D is illuminated. Then the CD slot B is free to load the next CD.
- If a position is selected, on which a CD is already located, this CD is ejected. Remove the ejected CD and load the desired CD.

DVD-preinstallation

Fig. 124 **DVD preparation in the front seat backrest**

Description of DVD installation kit » Fig. 124

A Openings for attachment of DVD player holder
B Audio/video input
C Connection input, DVD player

Only one DVD pre-installation is factory-installed in the seat backrest of the front seat.

The DVD player holder and DVD player can be purchased from ŠKODA original accessories. For a description of the use, refer to the operating instructions for these devices and equipment.

WARNING

- If there are passengers on both of the rear seats, the DVD player holder must not be used on its own (without the DVD player) - risk of injury!
- The inclination of the holder can be adjusted to three preset positions. Be careful not to injure fingers between the holder and the backrest when changes to the position of the DVD player holder are made.
- The DVD player holder must not be used when the rear seat backrest or the rear seat is folded forward or has been removed completely.

Note

Follow the instructions given in the operating instructions of the DVD player holder/DVD player.

SmartGate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

SmartGate is a system which transmits vehicle data via Wi-Fi.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a connected communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) [1] offer the possibility to further process the received data.

Available applications and further information can be found on the ŠKODA website..

WARNING

- The national legal regulations for using mobile communication devices in a vehicle must be observed.
- Do not fit the equipment or mounts to be connected to airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a connected device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury.

Note

The Wi-Fi range is limited to the interior of the vehicle.

Connection with SmartGate

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

For a successful connection the following conditions must be met.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.

Connect

› Can enable the connected device to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see operating instructions for the connected device).
› In the found networks menu, select the connection to the "SmartGate_ ... "network [2].
› Enter the password (the password is preset at the factory to the complete Vehicle Identification Number - enter capital letters).

Disconnecting the connection

The connection to SmartGate can be ended in the following ways.

› By disconnecting the connected device from SmartGate.
› By turning off the Wi-Fi in the connected device.
› By switching off the ignition and removing the key for more than 5 s (for vehicles with starter button - by turning off the engine and opening the driver's door).

[1] The applications support communications devices with the Android operating system version 4.0.x and later and iOS 7.xx and higher.

[2] The last six symbols of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

Automatic connection
The connection to SmartGate is automatically restored under the following conditions.
✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The device to be connected stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection problems
If the connection fails, check the following points.
› Are the conditions for a successful connection fulfilled?
› Is SmartGate available in the list of available Wi-Fi networks?
› Has the password required for the connection check been entered?
› Is the password is required for the connection check correct?
› Is the device to be connected still connected to another Wi-Fi network?

If the above items are ok but the connection still fails, contact a ŠKODA partner.

Note
Up to four devices can be connected to SmartGate at a time.

Smart Gate website

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

There is a special website for the SmartGate system.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the connected device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

This website contains information about the vehicle, the Wi-Fi connection and SmartGate.

In the Configuration area the Wi-Fi connection settings can be adjusted.

Save the setting changes
The setting changes are only applied after performing the following steps.
› The changes are saved by pressing the "Save" button.
› SmartGate is restarted by pressing the "Reboot "button.

Password Management

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

Passwords can be managed in the connected device on the SmartGate website» page 130, *Smart Gate website*.

The changes are applied after saving and restarting SmartGate » page 130, *Save the setting changes*.

Change password
› Enter a new password in the Configuration area in menu option WPA / WPA2 key.

The password must be 8-17 characters without diaktritica or special characters (for example, -, / , etc.).

Connection option without entering a password
› In the Configuration area set the value Open in the menu item Security .

Forgot password
If you have forgotten your password, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialized workshop.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 132, *Turn ignition on / off and start the engine*.
- With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 131 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 137, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 206.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.
IMMOBILIZER

Lock steering lock / unlock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

› Insert the key into the ignition lock.
› Switch on the ignition » page 132.

The vehicle is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Turn ignition on / off and start the engine

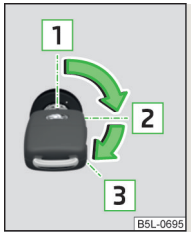

Fig. 125
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 125

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off

› Turn key to position 2.

The ignition is switched on.

› Turn key to position 1.

The ignition is switched off.

Starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

On vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress clutch to start!**
S **CLUTCH**

Vehicles with the START STOP system and automatic gearbox
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress brake to start.**
S **BRAKE**

Note

▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 137, *Parking*.
› Turn key to position 1 » Fig. 125 *on page 132*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Start or stop the engine by pressing button

Introduction

Fig. 126
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped with the starter button » Fig. 126.

The key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering wheel, start the vehicle and drive.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 206.

Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 134.

Lock / unlock the steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switch ignition on / off

Read and observe and on page 133 first.

› Press the button » Fig. 126 *on page 133* briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M **Ignition on!**
S **IGNITION SWITCHED ON**

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Starting the engine

Read and observe and on page 133 first.

Starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Press and hold the starter button » Fig. 126 *on page 133* [1] until the engine starts.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after pressing the button, the glow plug warning light lights up. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Note

▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe and on page 133 first.

Switching off

› Stop the vehicle » page 137, *Parking*.
› Press the button » Fig. 126 *on page 133* briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency shutdown

If necessary, the engine in exceptional cases may also be turned off while driving.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 126 *on page 133* for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the motor, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

[1] On vehicles with the START-STOP system, it is sufficient to press the starter button briefly. The motor will then automatically start.

Problems starting the engine

Fig. 127
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

The key in the vehicle cannot be verified
If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key not found.**
S **NO KEY**

The reasons for this may be as follows.
› The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
› The key is malfunctioning
› There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 127.

System fault
If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster there is a system malfunction.

M **Keyless faulty.**
S **CHECK KEYLESS**

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 127.

! CAUTION
The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

i Note
▪ When attempting to start, the key bit must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 127.
▪ If engine fails to start after pressing the button with the key, seek specialist help.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING
▪ Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
▪ During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
▪ When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!
▪ Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 140, *New brake pads*.

! CAUTION
Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes
Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display
If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 35, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING
Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake

Fig. 128
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 128 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake indicator light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission** engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing

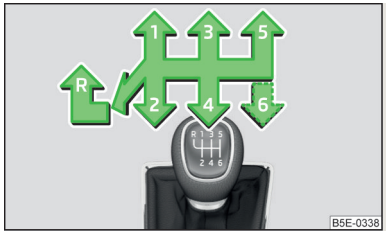

Fig. 129
The shift pattern: 5-gear or 6-gear manual transmission

On the shift lever, the individual gear positions are shown » Fig. 129.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 129.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances! ▸

In the driver's footwell, only a format may be used, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or foot mats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- When the vehicle is stationery and the engine is running, you need to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal in mode **D**, **S** or **R**. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

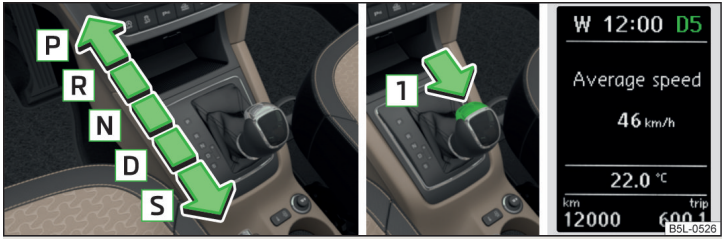

Fig. 130 **Selection lever / lock button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 130.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 130.

P – Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N - Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 130.

Fault in the automatic gearbox
A fault in the automatic gearbox can, for example, be noticeable by the following.
› Only certain gears are selected.
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
› Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

CAUTION
If an error occurs on the automatic transmission the help of a specialist firm should be sought immediately - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Selector lever lock

Read and observe and on page 138 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 130 *on page 138* .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D**.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 212.

Note
If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

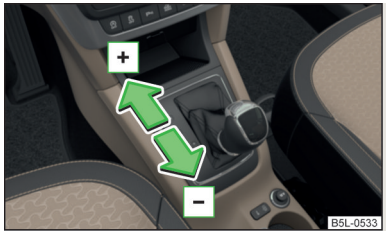

Fig. 131
Selector lever

Read and observe and on page 138 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 130 *on page 138*.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the gear selector from mode **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears
› Push the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 131.

Shifting down gears
› Push the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 131 .

Note

▪ It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 135, *Information on braking*.
▪ When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
▪ If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of 1 » Fig. 130 *on page 138* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 138 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)
› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

! WARNING
Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Driving in

Driving in the engine
The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1 000 km we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to dispense with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres
New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Switch in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 43.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling
When the engine is switched off, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine re-start.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 191.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 1 l/100 km. At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) only turn on for as long as necessary.

Driving through water and driving off of made-up roads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING
Immediately after driving through water, mud, slush and the like, braking effectiveness will be temporarily impaired » page 135, *Information on braking* . For this reason, sudden and violent braking manoeuvres are to be avoided - there is a risk of accident!

Driving through water

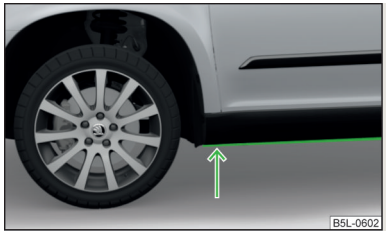

Fig. 132
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

Read and observe ! on page 141 first.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 132.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION
- Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a threat of serious damage being incurred by the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmission can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Driving off paved roads

Read and observe ! on page 141 first.

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 222, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

When travelling off paved roads, we recommend activating the OFF ROAD mode » page 144 .

! WARNING

Drive particularly aware and pro-actively outside paved roads.
- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Objects trapped under the floor of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

This chapter deals with the functions of the braking and stabilisation systems, with the error indicator referred to in chapter » page 34, *Warning lights*.

The braking and stabilisation systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Fig. 133
Press the ESC system: Activating/deactivating TCS

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. over steer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The » Fig. 133 button can only be used to deactivate the TCS » page 143.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

Fig. 134
Button for the TCS system: TCS disable / enable (vehicle without ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 143.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

The ASR can be deactivated via the » Fig. 134symbol button.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Trailer stabilisation (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

The activated TSA is shown by the fact that after switching on the ignition, the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the indicator light.

Further information » page 165, *Towing a trailer*.

OFF ROAD-mode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The OFF ROAD mode includes several features that help to overcome difficult navigable routes when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with OFF ROAD mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. This would lead the OFF ROAD mode to lose its effectiveness - risk of accident!
- The increased safety offered by the OFF ROAD mode must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise - risk of an accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure theOFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

Operation

Fig. 135
OFF ROAD button

Read and observe and on page 145 first.

We recommend that you activate the OFF ROAD mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

Activating

› Press the symbol button » Fig. 135.

The symbol in the button comes on.

Deactivate

› Press the symbol key » Fig. 135 or turn the ignition off.

The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

So that an engagement of the OFF ROAD mode can take place, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The OFF ROAD mode is enabled.
✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 30 km/h.
✓ The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode.

› Downhill Drive Support » page 145.
› TCS OFF ROAD » page 146.
› EDL OFF ROAD » page 146.
› ABS OFF ROAD » page 146.
› Start-Off Assistant » page 146.

Note

If the engine stalls while driving and is started again within 30 seconds, then OFF ROAD mode will be automatically activated.

Hill Descent Assistant

Read and observe and on page 145 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assistant), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

The assistant is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle engine is running. 1st, 2nd or 3rd gear, reverse gear or no gear is engaged and the selector lever is in position R, N, D, S or Tiptronic.
✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is operated.

During an intervention of the Assistants, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The assistant holds the vehicle speed at which the vehicle was travelling when it entered the slope.

By pressing the accelerator or brake pedal, the speed can be increased or reduced. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. The engagement of the assistant is resumed after the pedal is released.

For vehicles with **manual transmission,** the speed is maintained as follows.
- 1 gear - approx. 8[1] - 30 km/h
- 2 gear - approx. 13[1] - 30 km/h
- 3 gear - approx. 22[1] - 30 km/h
- Reverse gear - approx. 9[1] - 30 km/h
- Neutral for driving forwards - as well as driving backwards - approx. 2 - 30 km/h

On vehicles with **automatic transmission,** the speed is maintained as follows.
- Position D, S, R or Tiptronic (for 1st, 2nd or 3rd gear) - approx. 2 - 30 km / h;
- Neutral for driving forwards - as well as reversing - approx. 2 - 30 km/h

WARNING

For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

Note

During an active intervention of the assistant, the brake lights do not light up.

TCSOFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The ASR OFF ROAD makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note

When disabled, the TCS » Fig. 133 *on page 143* OFF ROAD mode works without the support of the TCS OFF ROAD.

EDS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The EDS supports OFF ROAD vehicle traction when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The ABS OFF ROAD supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface such as gravel, snow, etc.

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a "wedge" of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

The system is only available, if the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

The system operates at speeds of up to 50 km/h.

Start-Off Assistant [2]

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The Start-Off assistant assists the driver when setting off, such as on a steep slope or on a slippery surface. When the driver presses the accelerator, the maximum engine speed is electronically limited so that a gentle approach is possible.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment- or radio display[3] when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

[1] The indicated values represent the average of the lower speed limits if a gear is engaged (depending on the type of gearbox or engine).
[2] Only for vehicles with a petrol engine and manual transmission.
[3] Description of the display on the radio display » *Radio instruction manual*.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 137 *on page 147*.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 137 *on page 147* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Additionally installed accessories such as e.g. bicycle carriers can impair the system function.

Function

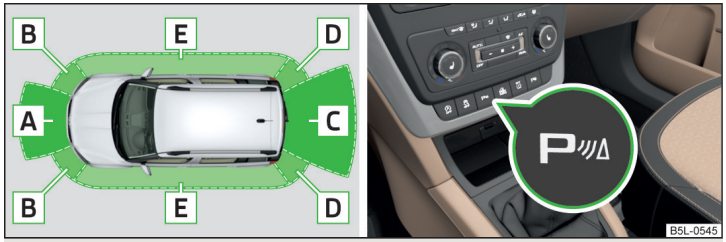

Fig. 136 **Sampled areas and range of the sensors / system button (Version 2, 3)**

Fig. 137 **Location of the ultrasonic sensors: front / rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 136.

› Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
› Version 2: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D.
› Version 3: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 136	Version 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Version 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	60
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	60
E	-	-	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

Towing a trailer
On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only system areas A and B » Fig. 136 are active when towing a trailer.

Note
- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle are active after activation the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The sound of the park-assist can be adjusted via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 47.

Shown in the infotainment display

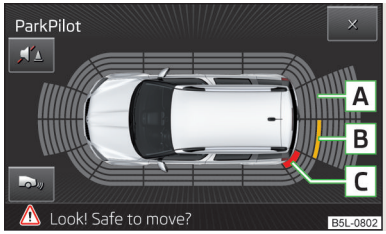

Fig. 138
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

Function keys and obstacle warning » Fig. 138
- Change to rear-view camera display .
- ✖ Switching off park assistant display.
- / Switching audible parking signals on / off.
- ⚠ Message: **Look! Safe to move?**
- A An area without detected obstacles is shown as a transparent segment.
- B An obstacle which is currently outside of the collision area is shown by the yellow segment
- C An obstacle in the collision zone is shown as an orange-coloured segment.

STOP Stop driving in the direction of an obstacle!

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button » Fig. 136 *on page 147* .

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal (the symbol in the button is lit).

On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with the **Version 2 and 3** the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the symbol key or at a speed over 15 km / h (the symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the symbol key at a speed of below 15 km / hr.

Optical Parking Assistant (Rear view camera)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Optical Parking Assistant (hereinafter referred to as system) shows the area to the rear of the vehicle monitored by the camera in the infotainment display » Fig. 139 *on page 149*.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Make sure that the camera lens is not dirty or covered, otherwise the system function can be significantly impaired. For information on cleaning » page 173, *Camera lens*

CAUTION

- The camera lens distorts and enlarges the field of view of the difference in eye sight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- It is only a two-dimensional display. Therefore, protruding objects or roadway depressions, for example, may not be recognised due to lack of space depth.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Operation

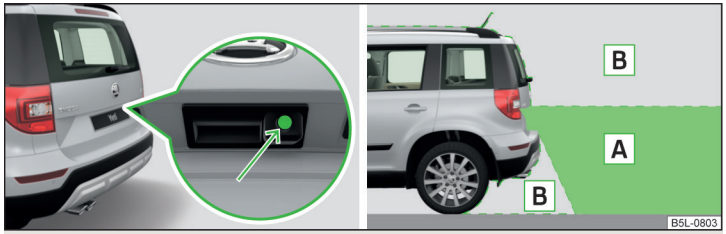

Fig. 139 **Position of the camera / monitored area**

Read and observe and on page 149 first.

Supervised area » Fig. 139

A Detection range of the camera.
B Area outside the detection range of the camera.

The area behind the vehicle is displayed when the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
- ✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
- ✓ The vehicle is not travelling at more than about 15 km/h.

Note

- The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 136 *on page 147*.
- After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 147.

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

Orientation lines and function keys

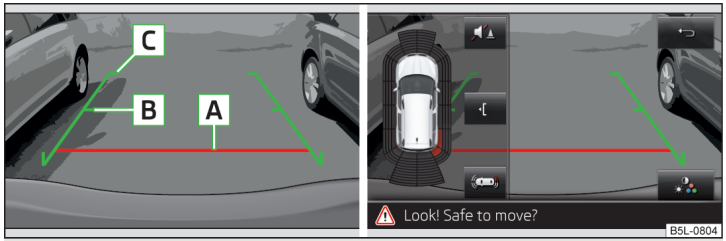

Fig. 140 **Infotainment display: Orientation lines / function keys**

Read and observe and on page 149 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 140

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is approximately 100 cm.
C The distance is approximately 200 cm.

The distance between the lateral guide bars corresponds to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function keys » Fig. 140

Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle.
Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour.
/ Switching audible parking signals on/off.
/ Switching reduced park assistance display on / off.
Change to park assistance display.

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
- Protruding objects, such as a hitch, the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Note

- The orientation lines are immobile, and therefore the spacing of the bars behind the vehicle will vary, depending on the vehicle load state and the road inclination.
- If reduced park assistance display is switched off the acoustic signal cannot be turned off with the button .

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or driving out of the parking space, the driver operates the pedals as well as the gear lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 146, *Parking aid* **must also be read and observed.**

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be recognised by the system.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Do without the use of the system if snow chains or a spare wheel is mounted.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

Note

We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.

Functioning

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

Basic system operations

› The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
› The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
› The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
› Automatic rotation of the front wheels during the parking.

The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display) information and system messages are displayed.

When the system is activated, the warning light lights up » Fig. 141 *on page 151* - A.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Finding a parking space

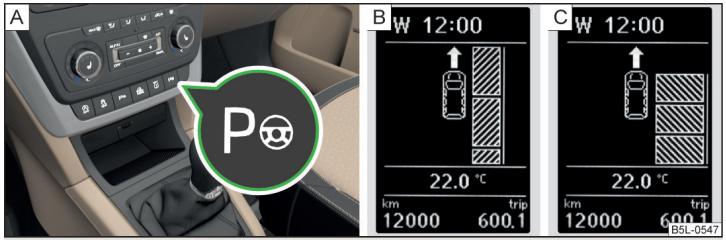

Fig. 141 **System button / display**

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

Finding a parallel parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the symbol button**once** » Fig. 141 .

The display shows the following » Fig. 141 - B.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the symbol button**twice** » Fig. 141 .

The display shows the following » Fig. 141 - C.

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the symbol button must be pressed again.

Note

If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display , the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking) .

Parking

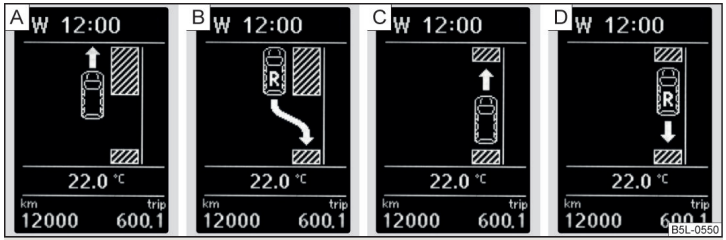

Fig. 142 **Display**

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

Display

A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
B Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
C Indication for selecting the forward gear.
D Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 142 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 142 - B.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the forward arrow flashes » Fig. 142- C, then shift to 1st gear or move the selector lever in position **D**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 142 - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R** .

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Park Assist ended. Please take over steering!

Automatic brake assist when speeding

If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the parking procedure if one of the following cases arises.

› A speed of 7 km / h is exceeded for the second time.
› The time limit of 6 minutes is exceeded.
› The system key is pressed.
› The TCS system is turned off.
› There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
› When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » page 153.

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Manoeuvring out

› Press the symbol button **once** P » Fig. 141 *on page 151* .
› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

Take over steering and continue driving

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.

› The system key is pressed.
› The TCS system is turned off.
› There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
› When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » page 153.

Automatic emergency braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION

If the parking is aborted due to the speed exceeding 7 km / h for the second speed, then the automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system!

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Park Assist: Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is P must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Please take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

Driver steering intervention: Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist finished. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist finished.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

Time limit exceeded. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist ended. System not available at present.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ASR intervention. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

PARK ASSIST Turn on turn signal and select reverse gear

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

Automatic space departure not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Park Assist: Brake interv. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the GRA maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- The GRA only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Functioning

Read and observe ! on page 154 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The GRA is activated.
✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic gearbox**, the selector lever must be in the **D** or **S** position, or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The current speed must be higher than 20 km/hr.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, vehicle operation must be taken over!

Operating Description

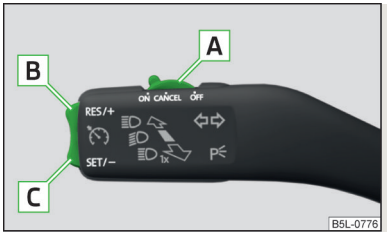

Fig. 143
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 154 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 143

A	OFF	Deactivate GRA (delete stored speed)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
B	RES/+	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	SET/–	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed stored, the current speed is adopted.

After starting the system, the current speed is stored and the instrument cluster lights up the warning light .

After the interruption in control, the stored speed can be resumed by pressing the B button.

Automatic control interruption
Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.
› By pressing the brake or clutch pedal.
› When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
› Through an airbag deployment.

WARNING
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note
During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO_2 emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

WARNING
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions of the system

Fig. 144
Maxi DOT display: Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.
✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If after stopping the car, the message **START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE** appears in the segment display or the » Fig. 144 check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential for the following reasons, for example.
› The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The current consumption is too high.
› High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

Note

▪ If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
▪ After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Stop the vehicle.
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START-STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display Ⓐ » Fig. 144 *on page 155*.

Automatic engine start
› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START-STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display Ⓐ » Fig. 144 *on page 155*.

Automatic engine start
› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Further information on automatic transmission
The automatic engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P** the engine remains shut down after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position then the automatic starts the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D, S** or **N,** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are:
› The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
› The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
› The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Fig. 145
Button for the START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

Deactivating/activating
› Press the symbol button (A OFF) » Fig. 145.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the indicator light in the button lights up.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start engine manually!**
S **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the system KESSY the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

M **Error: Start-Stop system**
S **ERROR START-STOP**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to only as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behaviour, driver fatigue can be detected.

WARNING
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note
- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behaviour. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behaviour and recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km / h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.
› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 47.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

In MAXI DOT display the icon appears for a few seconds and the following message.

Fatigue detected. Take a break!

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to only as a system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up and an audible signal sounds.

Information on the procedure for the notification of change of tyre inflation pressure » page 40.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 191.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

Save tyre pressure values

Fig. 146
Key for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

Save the tyre pressure values as follows.

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press » Fig. 146 symbol icon and hold down.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up.

An acoustic signal and the control indicator provide information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

› Press icon button.

Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.
› Change of tyre inflation pressure.
› Change one or more wheels.
› Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
› Illumination of the warning light in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 191. If the wrong pressure valuesare stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

CAUTION

Save the tyre pressure values every 10,000 km or 1x annually to ensure correct system functioning.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **80 kg/h**.

On vehicles with four-wheel drive and the 2.0 l / 103 kW TDI CR or 2.0 L / 125 kW TDI CR engine, the maximum trailer nose weight is **85 kg** .

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the ball head, if it is not correctly inserted into the mounting recess and secured.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

CAUTION

- Take care with the ball bar - risk of paint damage to the bumper.
- Always attach the cap to the receiving shaft when the ball bar is removed - risk of receiving-shaft contamination.

Note

- Operation and maintenance of towing equipment » page 174.
- The towing vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 209.

Description

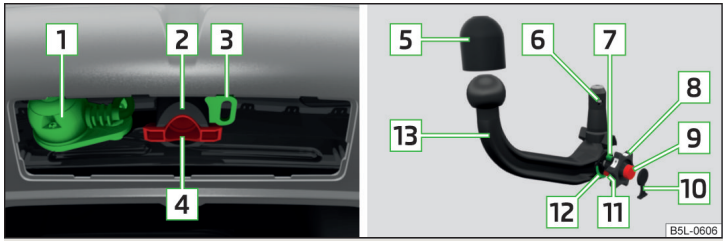

Fig. 147 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

Support for the Towing hitch and tow bar » Fig. 147

1 13-pin power socket
2 Mounting recess
3 Safety eyelet
4 Cover for the mounting recess
5 Dust cap
6 Locking ball
7 Green marking on the handwheel
8 Handwheel
9 Key
10 Lock cap
11 Red marking on the handwheel
12 Green box on the tow bar
13 Tow ball

Note

On the bottom of the key is a code number. If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to use this code number to provide you with a new one.

Adjusting the ready position

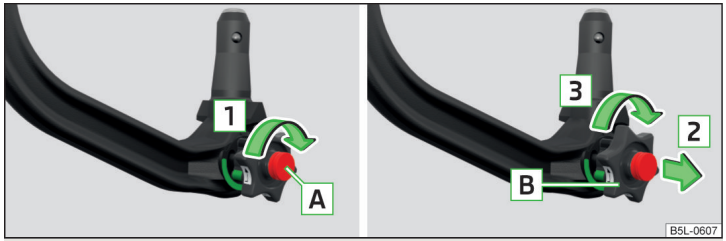

Fig. 148 **Lock unlock / pull out hand wheel and turn**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

The tow bar must be set to the ready position prior to installation» page 160, *Correctly set ready position*.

If not in the ready position, it must be set to the ready position as follows.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert the key into the hand wheel lock.
› Turn the key A in direction of the arrow 1 to the stop » Fig. 148.
› Pull the handwheel B in the direction of the arrow 2 and drag in the direction of the arrow 3 to the stop.

The hand wheel B remains locked in this position.

Correctly set ready position

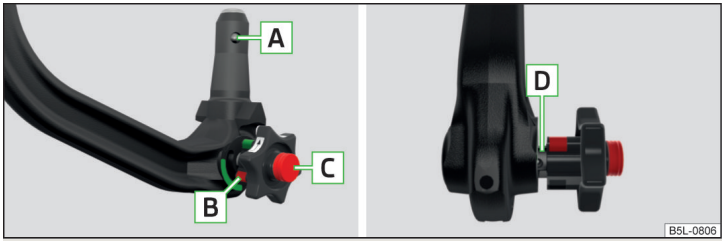

Fig. 149 **Ready position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

Correctly set ready position » Fig. 149

✓ The locking balls A can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
✓ The red marking B on the hand wheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
✓ The key C is in the unlocked position and cannot be removed.
✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 5 mm D between the hand wheel and the tow bar.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

! CAUTION

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the handwheel lock.

Installing the ball rod

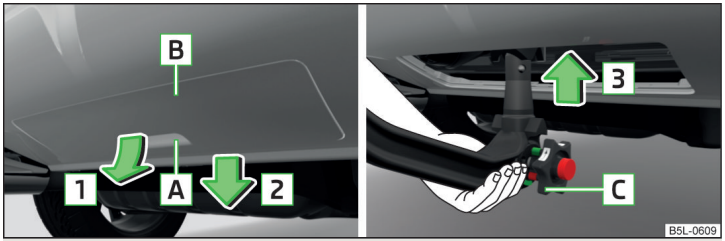

Fig. 150 **Removing the cap on the rear bumper/inserting the tow bar**

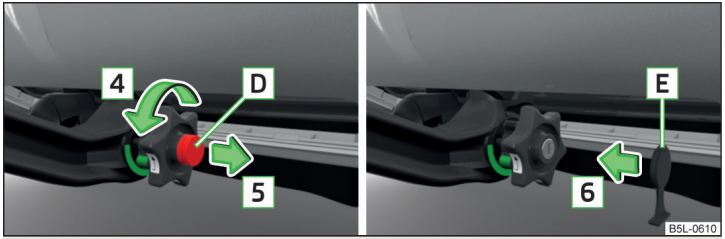

Fig. 151 **Locking the lock and removing the the key/replacing the lock cap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

› Grip the cap on the rear bumper B » Fig. 150 at the handle A, release in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 147 *on page 159* in a downwards direction.
› Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 160.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 150 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 3 until you hear it click into place » !.

The handwheel C » Fig. 150 returns **automatically** and rests on the tow bar » !.

› Lock the handwheel lock by turning the key D » Fig. 151 to the left in the direction of the arrow 4 to the stop, and remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Put the cap E onto the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 6 » !.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 161.

! WARNING

- When attaching the tow bar, do not hold the handwheel by hand - risk of injuring fingers!
- When removing the cover for the mounting recess, watch out for your hand coming into contact with the opening of the bumper - risk of injuring hand!
- After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key.

! CAUTION

- When removing the cover on the rear bumper, please note that there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper or cover.
- After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the handwheel lock – risk of lock getting dirty.
- If the tow bar is not in the ready position, it cannot be fitted in the mounting recess.

i Note

Store the cover for the rear bumper and the cover for the mounting recess in a suitable location in the boot after removal.

Check proper fitting

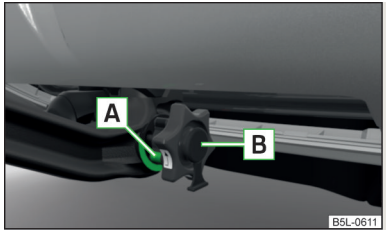

Fig. 152
Duly fortified ball head

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Correctly secured ball head » Fig. 152

✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
✓ The green marking A on the handwheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
✓ The handwheel lies flush with the tow bar - there is no gap.
✓ The key is removed.
✓ The cover B is attached to the locked handwheel lock.

WARNING

Do not use the towing equipment unless the ball head has been properly locked - risk of accident.

Removing the ball rod

Fig. 153 **Removing the lock cover/releasing the lock**

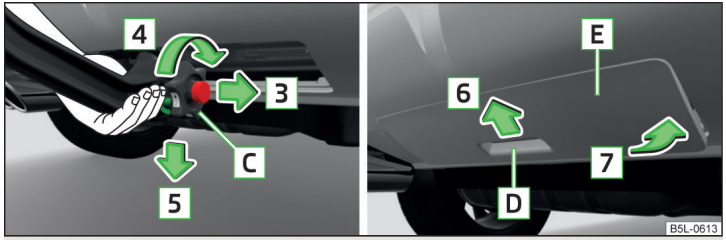

Fig. 154 **Removing the two bar/placing the cover on the rear bumper**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

› Remover the cover A from the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 153.
› Insert the key into the handwheel lock.
› Turn the key B 2 in the direction of the arrow as far as the stop.
› Grip the tow bar **from below** and with the other hand pull the handwheel C in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 154.
› Turn the handwheel in the direction of the arrow 4 **to the stop**, and hold in this position.
› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 5.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Attach the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 147 *on page 159* » !.
› Grip the cover on the rear bumper E » Fig. 154 at the handle D and position in the direction of the arrow 6 on the checkmark underneath the upper edge of the bumper.
› Push this cover onto the lower edge and onto the two sides in the direction of the arrow 7.

WARNING

- Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.
- Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

- If the handwheel is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed, and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- The mounting recess must be closed with the cover following removal. This prevents foreign bodies from getting into the mounting recess.

Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Accessories

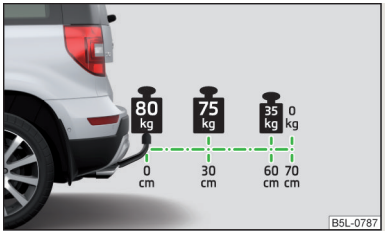

Fig. 155
Illustration of the maximum permissible projection of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessories including the load depending on the load center of gravity.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

An accessories can mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch (e.g. bike carriers).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessories including load are to be checked.

The maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 155.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes varies as the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing hitch increases.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	80 kg / 85 kg[a)]
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

a) Applies to 4x4 vehicles with the 2.0 l / 103 kW TDI CR and 2.0 L / 125 kW TDI CR engine.

! WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessories including load - risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.
- Never exceed the permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch - risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.

i Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

i Note

If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » page 214.

Coupling / uncoupling trainer

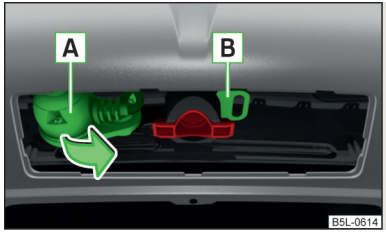

Fig. 156
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Coupling

› Fit the ball bar.
› Swing the 13-pin socket in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 156.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 147 *on page 159* .
› Place the trailer onto the ball.
› Plug the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 156.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories to establish a connection to the electricity.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet B.

The breakaway cable of the trailer has to **sag** when mounted into the security lock slot for all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reverse driving and the like.)

Uncoupling

› Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the safety eyelet B » Fig. 156.
› Unplug the trailer cable from the 13-pin socket.
› Remove the trailer from the ball head.
› Place the cap 5 » Fig. 147 *on page 159* onto the ball head.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 156.

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 64, *Lights and visibility*[1].

WARNING

- Incorrect or improperly connected electrical installation can cause accidents and serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they are working.

WARNING (Continued)

- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

CAUTION

Incorrect or improperly connected electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

Loading a trailer

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 191.

Towing capacity and trailer weight

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 222, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

[1] Applies to vehicles with bi-xenon headlights.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load or the permissible weight of the trailer - risk of accident!
- Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the indicator light in the instrument cluster starts to flash.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 36, *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

CAUTION

If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 56.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 167 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

She will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle and to prevent damage.

This involves, for example, the coolant, battery replacement and the like.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs
ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system will then have to be replaced if the airbag is deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODAvehicles can be recycled by up to 95 % and can always [1]be returned free of charge.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the under floor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe and on page 169 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

CAUTION

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe and on page 169 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

Note

See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 172 .

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the under floor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and mirrors

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Cleaning windows

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Camera lens

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Moisten the lens of the rear view camera first with clean water and then dry with a dry cloth.

Remove the snow from the lens with a brush and the ice from the lens with de-icing agents specifically developed for these purposes.

CAUTION

- Remove snow or ice on the lens with warm or hot water - there is a risk of damaging the lens.
- Never use cleaners containing abrasive effect to clean the lens.
- Never use pressurized water or steam jet to clean the lens.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Jack

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing hitch and mounting recess

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

If dirt is present, clean the inner surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Apply a suitable grease if necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example » page 170.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.

▪ Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
▪ Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
▪ Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
▪ Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 174 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth ».

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION

▪ Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
▪ Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
▪ The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
▪ Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
▪ Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe and on page 174 first.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush. ▸

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION
- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe and on page 174 first.

Electrically heated seats
Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » .

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION
- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe and on page 174 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

WARNING
- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 157 *on page 177*.

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

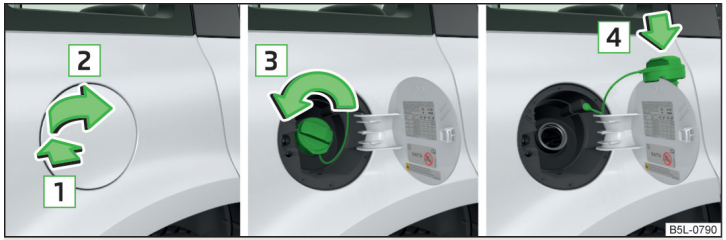

Fig. 157 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 111.

Vehicles with lockable fuel filler flap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 according-ly » Fig. 157.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » !.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Vehicles without lockable fuel filler flap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 accordingly » Fig. 157.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Hold the filler cap and unlock by turning the key in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » !.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Screw in the tank cap in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.
› Hold the filler cap and lock it by turning in the opposite direction of the arrow 3. Remove the key.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

! WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!
- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.

! WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.

i Note

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about **55 litres,** and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about **60 litres,** with about **9 liters** as reserve.

Lead-free petrol

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228**[1)] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95** RON, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91, 92** and **93** RON can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 98/95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In case of an emergency, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available » !.

[1)] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Even filling the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!

CAUTION
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

CAUTION
In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

CAUTION
Fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) **must not be used. Risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!**

Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[2] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.
[2] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.
[3] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Diesel fuel additives
The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION
- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING
Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING
Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING
Information for working in the engine room
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

WARNING
Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING
Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

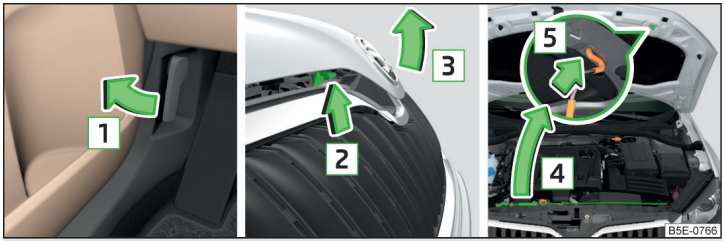

Fig. 158 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 158.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.

WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 158.

Engine compartment overview

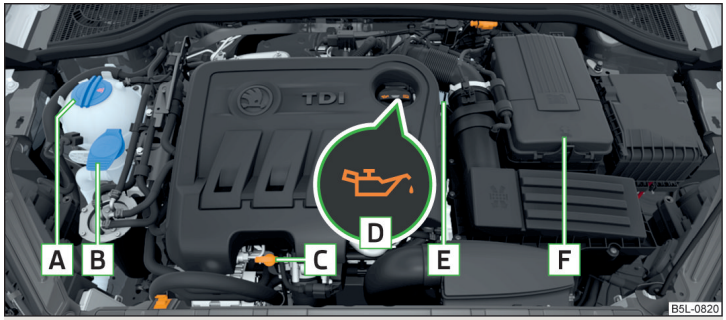

Fig. 159 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 159

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	185
B	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	182
C	Engine oil dipstick	184
D	Engine oil filler opening	184
E	Brake fluid reservoir	186
F	Battery (below a cover)	187

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

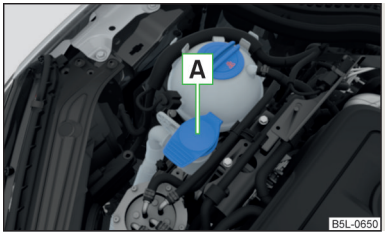

Fig. 160
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 160.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system [1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

[1] In some countries, 5.5 ltr. applies for both variants.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 49.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 180.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l / 77 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l / 90 kW TSI	
1.8 l/112, 118 kW TSI	

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00
2.0 l/81, 103, 125 kW TDI CR	

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l / 77 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l / 90 kW TSI	
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	
1.8 l/112, 118 kW TSI	VW 502 00
	applies to Russia SAE 0W-30 VW 502 00 / 505 00

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00
2.0 l/81, 103, 125 kW TDI CR	

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

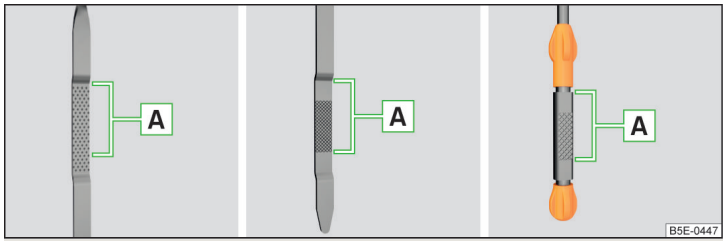

Fig. 161 **Principle sketch: Dipstick**

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 161

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
› Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/ 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark and the corresponding message » page 37. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the A range » Fig. 161 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!
- Stop driving if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 159 *on page 182*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 183.
› Check the oil level » page 184.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive content in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 162 *on page 185*.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 180.

- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could fill with air - risk of engine damage, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 162 *on page 185*.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Note

The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Checking the coolant level

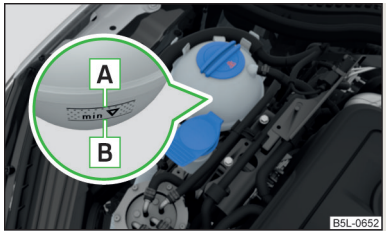

Fig. 162
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 185 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 162

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level
B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The engine is not heated.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 162.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark A » Fig. 162.

In case of low coolant level, the indicator symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster along with the relevant message» page 36. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 185 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 185, ! in section *Introduction*.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

- Only top up with new coolant.
- Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 163 *on page 186*.

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 180.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 163 *on page 186*, STOP do not continue driving - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using oils from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level

Fig. 163
Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 163.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 35, *Brake system*.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 186 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Importance
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.
- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal.
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!

WARNING (Continued)

- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal ⊖ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

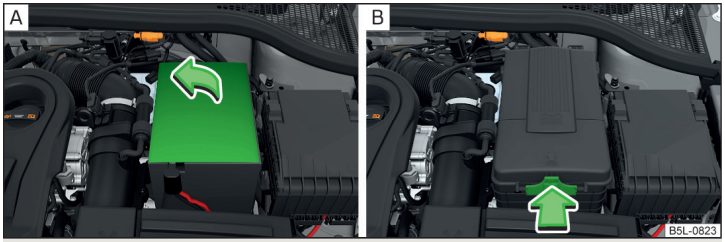

Fig. 164 **Polyester vehicle battery cover / plastic vehicle battery cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 187 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 164.

› Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 164- Aor press the catch on the side of the battery cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 164- B.
› fold the cover up and remove.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

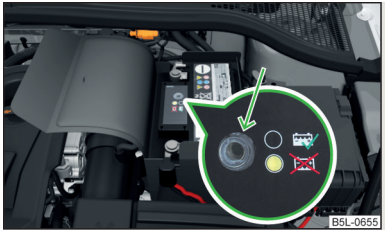

Fig. 165
Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 187 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator » Fig. 165, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note
▪ The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
▪ For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 187 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents
› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages
It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

! WARNING
▪ When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
▪ Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
▪ Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
▪ Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
▪ "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
▪ We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

! CAUTION
On vehicles with the START / STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), do not connect the pole terminal of the charger directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but only to the engine earth » page 206.

Replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 187 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

Read and observe ! and ! on page 187 first.

Disconnecting

› Switch off the ignition.
› Disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ first and then the positive ⊕ terminal of the battery.

Connecting

› Connect the positive terminal ⊕ first, then the negative ⊖battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electrical power windows	» page 60
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 62
Sun screen	» page 62
Radio or navigation system	Enter code number » *Radio manual* , » *Infotainment radio manual*or » *Infotainment navigation manual*
Time settings	» page 33

CAUTION

▪ Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
▪ Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

▪ After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
▪ The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 187 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING

The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING

For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.

For the sake of the environment

Old and unserviceable tyres are classified in a special environmentally hazardous category. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 191 first.

New tyres do not offer optimum grip during the first 500 km and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Tyre storage

Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age

Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are older than 6 years.

Wheel bolts

Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING

Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

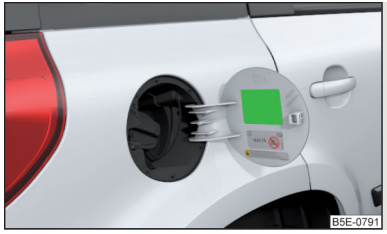

Fig. 166
Label with table of tyre sizes and tyre pressures / inflate pressures

Read and observe ! on page 191 first.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre inflation pressures are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 166.

The tyre pressure for the spare wheel should correspond to the highest pressure specified for your vehicle.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be stored every time the tyre pressure changes » page 158.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- In the event of very fast tyre inflation pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

In some countries, the vehicles have a sticker without pictograms.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 191 first.

Tyre wear depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Attention to the following factors can reduce tyre wear.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Wheel balance

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels likewise rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Setting the vehicle geometry

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. With a distinct tyre wear pattern, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

WARNING

- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement

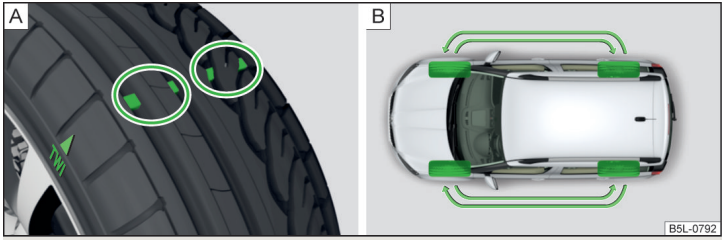

Fig. 167 **Principle sketch: Replace tyre tread with wear indicators / wheels**

Read and observe ! on page 191 first.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres contains has a 1.6 mm high wear indicator » Fig. 167 - A. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Replacement of wheels
For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to the scheme » Fig. 167- B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After a wheel has been replaced, the tyre pressure has to be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure valuesare to be stored » page 158.

WARNING
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

Tyre damage

Read and observe ! on page 191 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and perpendicularly wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

WARNING
Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

CAUTION
The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! on page 191 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1.2 l/77 kW TSI for the engine which apply in the module » page 194, *Yeti with the 1.2 l/77 kW TSI engine.*listed shared tires variants.

For the other engines that apply in the module » page 194, *Other engine variants*listed shared tires variants.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

The information listed in the table corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

The approved tyre / rim combinations for your car are given on the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

Explanation of the tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **225/65 R 17 91 T** means:

225	Tyre width in mm
50	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
17	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example, **DOT ... 11 14...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

The marking **M+S**means that the associated tyre is suitable for winter use.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	90	91	92	93	94	95	97
Load (In kg)	600	615	630	650	670	690	730

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed icon	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

CAUTION

The information about load index and speed symbol can be found in the vehicle sales and technical documentation.

Yeti with the 1.2 l/77 kW TSI engine.

Model variant	**Tyre size**	**Minimal Load index**	**Minimal Speed icon**
Yeti with a ground clearance of 155 mm	205/50 R17	93	T
	205/55 R16	91	T
	195/65 R15	91	T
	225/45 R17	91	T
Yeti with a ground clearance of 180 mm	205/50 R17	93	T
	205/55 R16	91	T
	215/60 R16	95	T
	225/50 R17	94	T

Other engine variants

Engine variant	**Tyre size**	**Minimal load index**	**Minimal speed icon**
1.4 ltr. / 90 kW TSI	205/50 R17	93	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	215/60 R16	95	H
	225/50 R17	94	H
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	205/50 R17	93	T
	205/55 R16	91	T
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	205/50 R17	93	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	215/60 R16	95	H
	225/50 R17	94	H
1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI	205/50 R17	93	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	215/60 R16	95	H
	225/50 R17	94	H

Engine variant	Tyre size	Minimal load index	Minimal speed icon
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	205/55 R16	91	T
	205/50 R17	93	T
	215/60 R16	95	T
	225/50 R17	94	T
2.0 ltr/81 kW TDI CR	205/50 R17	93	T
	205/55 R16	91	T
	215/60 R16	95	T
	225/50 R17	94	T
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR	205/50 R17	93	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	215/60 R16	95	H
	225/50 R17	94	H
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	205/50 R17	93	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	215/60 R16	95	H
	225/50 R17	94	H

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres

Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions.

To obtain the best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth must be 4 mm.

Winter tyres (marked **M+S** and a mountain peak / snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » page 47.

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

The use of snow chains on vehicles with front-wheel drive and on vehicles with four-wheel drive differs.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **12 mm**.

Front-wheel drive

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205 / 55 R16
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205 / 50 R17

All-wheel drive

Snow chains can be mounted on the wheels on the front and rear axles.

To increase the traction (start-up properties), the use of snow chains is also technically permissible on the rear axle (this means on the front and rear axle at the same time) for the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55 R16
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50 R17

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains on rear axles with the following wheel / tyre combinations:

Wheel size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
7J x 16	45 mm	215/60 R16
7J x 17	45 mm	225/50 R17

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 200.

WARNING

Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on snow-free paths. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

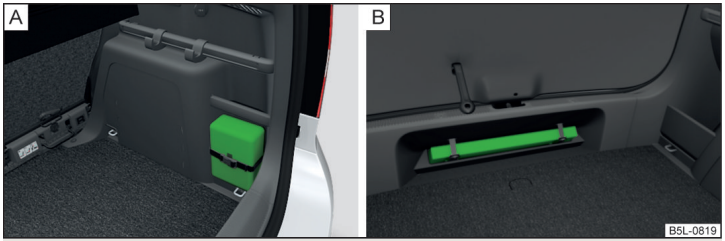

Fig. 168 **First-aid kit/warning triangle**

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The storage compartments may be too small for other first aid kits and warning triangles.

First-aid box
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 168 - A.

Warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 168 - B.

The warning triangle, which is included in the equipment with the spare wheel, can be stowed in a removable box on the right next to the spare wheel » page 102.

WARNING
The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Placement of the reflective vest

Fig. 169
Reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stowed in a holder under the driver's seat » Fig. 169.

Fire extinguisher

Fig. 170
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 170.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› Secure the fire extinguisher by placing it back into the holder and fastening with straps.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

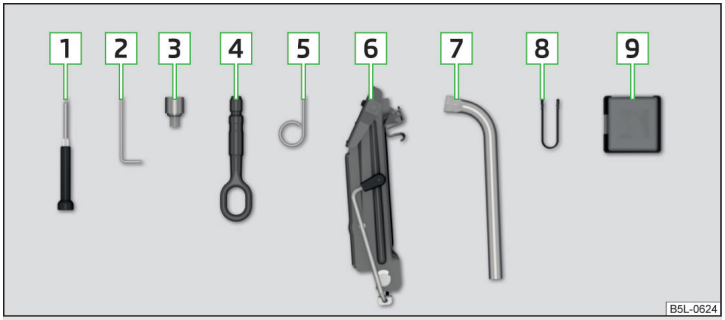

Fig. 171 **Vehicle tool kit**

The vehicle tool kit is housed in a box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Depending upon vehicle configuration: Jack with sign / puncture repair kit
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
9 Replacement bulb set

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Reserve and temporary spare

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

If you need to use an emergency or spare wheel, make sure to fit a standard wheel of the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values » page 158.

WARNING

- If you have to fit the spare tyre with a non-specified direction or an opposite direction of rotation due to a puncture, then drive carefully. The best properties of the tyre are no longer present in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Remove / store wheel

Fig. 172
Taking the wheel out

Read and observe ! on page 199 first.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a fastening screw » Fig. 172.

Take out wheel

› Open the tailgate.
› Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 102.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the fastening screw in direction of arrow » Fig. 172.
› Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

› Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing upwards.
› Screw on the fastening screw in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 172 until the wheel is safely secured.
› Replace the box with the tool kit.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Shut the boot lid.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 199 first.

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.

› The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 191.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, since it is not intended for permanent use.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » page 193, *Explanation of the tyre labelling*.

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Switch off the engine.
› Engage **1st gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission **in the P-position**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 198 and the **spare wheel** » page 199 from the boot.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel cover.

Extracting

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 198 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » !.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.
- When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area.
- If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

Fig. 173
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the covering caps.

Extracting

› Push the extraction pliers » page 198 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 173.

Fitting

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

Changing a wheel

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 193.

! WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

Follow-up tasks

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 199.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 158.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

! WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 174
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts, the caps for the wheel bolts must be pulled off.

Release

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174, until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, the covering caps must be replaced.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foodt**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 203.

Raising the vehicle

Fig. 175
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

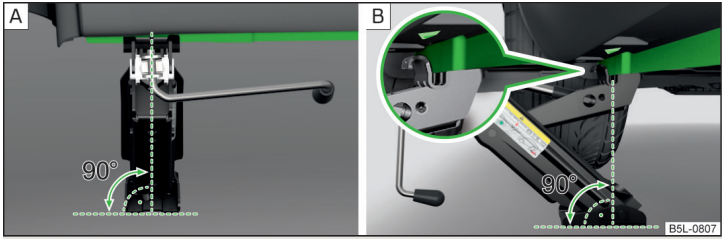

Fig. 176 **Attach lifting jack**

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

The mounting points are located directly below the mark on the lower beam » Fig. 175.

› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 176 - A.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 176 - B.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting

- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the web of the lower fork leg - risk of damage to the vehicle.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

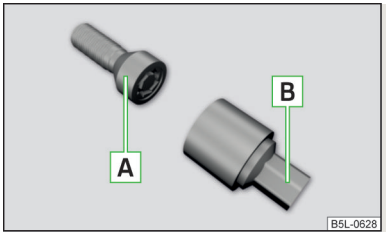

Fig. 177
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter B » Fig. 177.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› Insert adapter B » Fig. 177 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 202.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

To be equipped for a possible wheel change, the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle. The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

Note

- Note the code number which is embossed both on the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel cover with every ŠKODA supplied original equipment hub cap or directly at the factors. When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre!

WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Components of the puncture repair kits

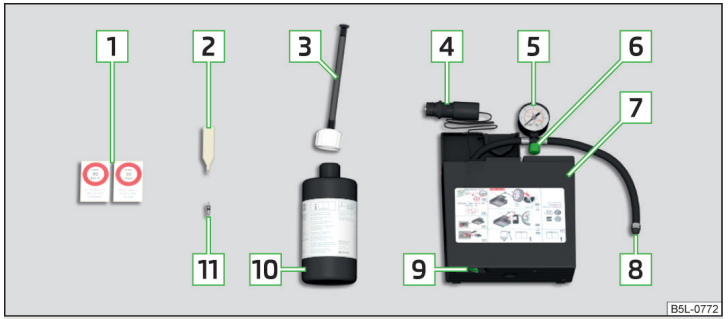

Fig. 178 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

Components of the kit » Fig. 178

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 12 volt cable connector
5 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
6 Air release valve
7 Air compressor
8 Tyre inflation hose
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. The kit contains a sealant and an air compressor.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The national legal requirements must be observed when repairing a tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

› The rim is damaged.
› The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
› The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
› The tyre wall is damaged.
› The result will be to drive with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyres.
› After the expiration date (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

› Switch off the engine.
› Engage **1st gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission **in the P-position**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 203.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 178 *on page 204* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 178 *on page 204* back and forth several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 8 » Fig. 178 *on page 204* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 6 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 4 into 12 Volt socket » page 90.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 8 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 8 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 8 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› STOP **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure to the correct value.

› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 180.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

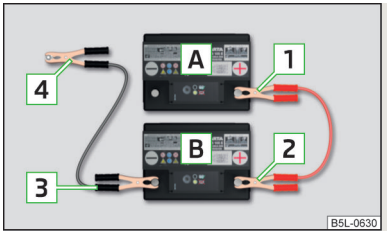

Fig. 179
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Fig. 180
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 179 .
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

The jump-start cable must be connected to the engine earthing point only on vehicles with the START-STOP system » Fig. 180.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

› If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables
Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

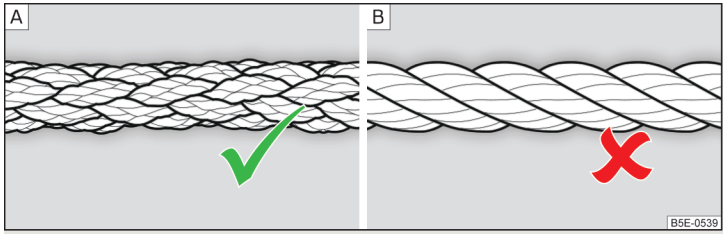

Fig. 181 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For towing, a braided tow rope is to be used » Fig. 181 - A.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

Driver of the tow vehicle
› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle
› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn-signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.

› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

WARNING

- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- Do not use spiral rope for towing » Fig. 181- B, the towing eye may unscrew from the vehicle - risk of accident.
- Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 206, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 208 or » page 209 to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 159.

Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye

Fig. 182 **Removing the cap / fitting the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 208 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 182.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the region of the arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 182 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

Fig. 183 **Removing the cap / fitting the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 208 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 183.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 183 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 208 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 159, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

i Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control and removable light

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

Fig. 184 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 184 with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 210.

Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

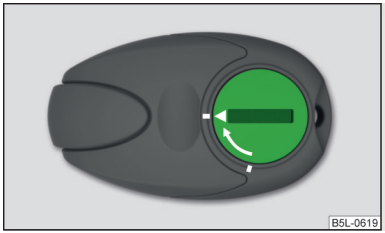

Fig. 185
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 185.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

replace batteries of the removable lights

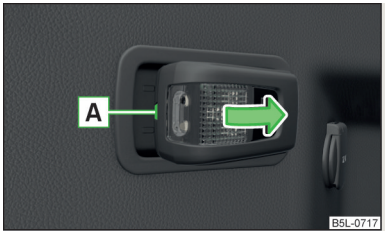

Fig. 186
Taking out the lamp

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

- Take out the light in the direction of arrow » Fig. 186.
- Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the location of the lock-off clips A .
- Remove the faulty rechargeable batteries from the lamp.
- Insert the new rechargeable batteries.
- Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner. If the lamp is not correctly opened, it can be damaged.
- The replacement rechargeable batteries must have the same specification as the original rechargeable batteries. If other types of rechargeable batteries are used, the power output can be reduced or it can lead to a malfunction of the lamp.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

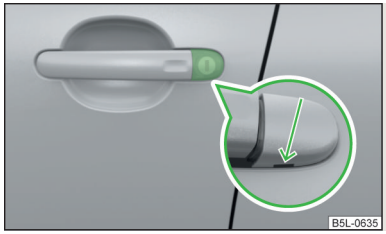

Fig. 187
Handle on the driver's door: covered lock cylinder

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

- Pull on the door handle and hold in place.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover in the arrow area » Fig. 187.
- Fold the cover upwards.
- Release the door handle.
- Insert the vehicle key bit into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.

Pull on the door handle and replace the cover in its original location.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

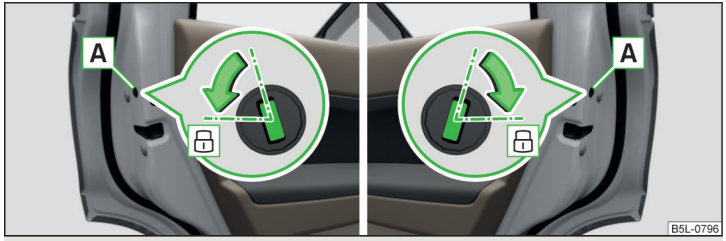

Fig. 188 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the cover A » Fig. 188.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
› Replace the cover A.

Unlocking the tailgate

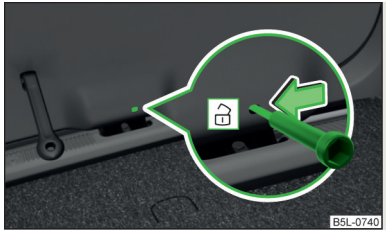

Fig. 189
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

The boot lid can be unlocked manually in an emergency.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 189 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the tailgate.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

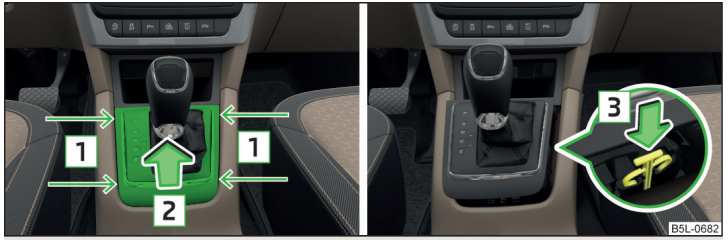

Fig. 190 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Insert a flathead screwdriver into the gap in the arrow range 1 » Fig. 190 and lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 3.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION
Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING
Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing front windscreen wipers

Fig. 191 **Windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 212 first.

When in the rest position, the wiper arms cannot be fold down from the windscreen. Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› Press the control lever in position 4 within 10 seconds » page 73.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of 1 » Fig. 191.
› Press the securing clip A in the direction of arrow 2 to unlock the wiper blade.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.

The windscreen wiper arms move back into the rest position - after switching on the ignition and changing the position of the window wiper lever or when driving at a speed of more than 6°km/h.

CAUTION

If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

Fig. 192 **Rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 212 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of 1 » Fig. 192.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 214, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 216, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 180.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse burns through again, then a specialist should be consulted immediately.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel

Fig. 193
Distribution board cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 193.
› Remove the cover of the fuse box and remove.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.
› Re-insert the cover of the fuse box .

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

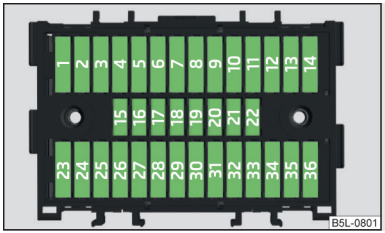

Fig. 194
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Heating of the gearbox vent (diesel engine) Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
2	Towing hitch - left light
3	Towing hitch - right light
4	Instrument cluster control lever under the steering wheel, camera
5	Air blower for heating, radiator fan, air conditioning system, Climatronic
6	Rear window wiper
7	Phone
8	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
9	Vehicle voltage control unit - interior lights Rear fog light
10	Rain sensor, light switch, diagnosis connector, removable light
11	Left side cornering lights
12	Right side cornering lights
13	Radio, DVD
14	Central control unit, engine control unit
15	Light switch
16	Haldex
17	KESSY controller, steering wheel locking
18	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, brake sensor, Haldex
19	Control unit for ABS, ESP, switch for tyre air pressure control, control unit for parking aid, switch for OFF ROAD mode, START STOP button
20	Switch and airbag control unit
21	WIV, tail lamp, dimming mirror, pressure sensor, telephone preparation, air mass sensor, control unit for headlight range control and headlight tilt
22	Instrument cluster controller for electro-mechanical power steering, control unit for data bus
23	Central locking system and bonnet lid
24	Rear power window
25	Rear window heater, auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot
27	Panorama window - sliding / tilting roof, electric sunblind
28	Fuel pump, injection valves
29	Front power window
30	front and rear lighter
31	Headlight cleaning system
32	Front seat heating, regulator for seat heating
33	Heating, air conditioning, Climatronic, remote control for auxiliary heating
34	Alarm, spare horn
35	Control unit for DSG automatic gearbox
36	Control unit for trailer detection

Fuses in the engine compartment

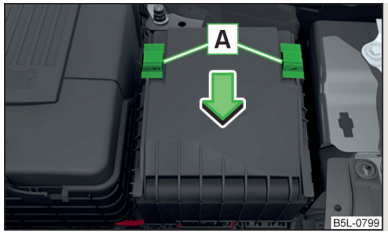

Fig. 195
Distribution board cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

With some equipment, the battery cover must be opened before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 188.

Replacing fuses

› Turn the securing bracket A » Fig. 195 in direction of the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

› Remove the cover.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Replace the cover on the fuse box and the safety clip A move against the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

The cover is locked into position.

! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle!

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

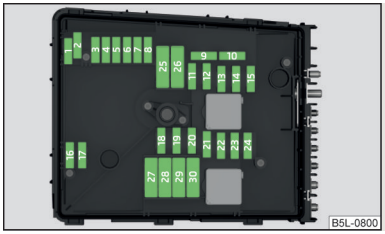

Fig. 196
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Control unit for automatic gearbox
3	Battery data module
4	ABS control unit
5	Control unit for automatic gearbox
6	Not assigned
7	Power supply for terminal 15, starter
8	Radio, instrument cluster, telephone
9	Not assigned
10	Engine control unit
11	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
12	Data bus control unit
13	Engine control unit
14	Ignition
15	Lambda probe, fuel pump Glow plug system
16	Vehicle voltage control unit, right headlight, right tail light
17	Horn
18	Amplifier for digital sound processor
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Control valve for fuel pressure, high pressure pump

No.	Consumer
21	Lambda probe
22	Clutch pedal switch, brake pedal switch
23	Coolant pump Solenoid valve for charge pressure control, change-over valve for cooler High-pressure fuel pump
24	Active charcoal filter, exhaust gas recirculation valve, radiator fan
25	ABS control unit
26	Vehicle voltage control unit, left headlight, left tail light
27	Glow plug system
28	Windscreen heater
29	Power to the internal fuse carrier
30	Terminal X[a)]

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Replacing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 180.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury. We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

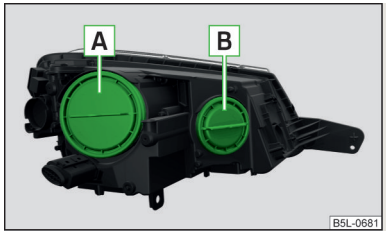

Fig. 197
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 217 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and a halogen bulb.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 197

A Low beam with halogen bulb or xenon gas discharge lamp
B Main beam

Change bulb for low beam and high beam

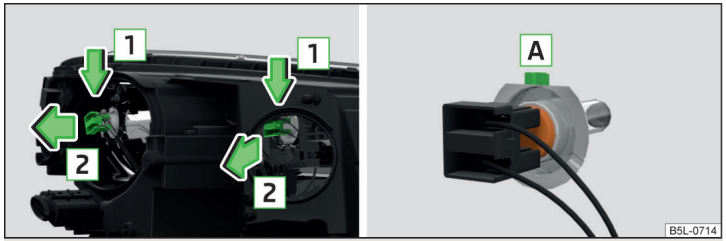

Fig. 198 **Headlight with halogen bulb: Bulbs for low and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 217 first.

› Turn the respective protective cap » Fig. 197 *on page 218* counter-clockwise and remove.

When removing the cap, make sure that this does not fall into the engine compartment.

› Disconnect the relevant connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 198.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug A adjusts the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
› Insert the respective protective cap » Fig. 197 *on page 218* and rotate it clockwise until it stops.

Note

We recommend you have the bulb replacement performed by a specialist garage.

Remove the protective grille for fog lights

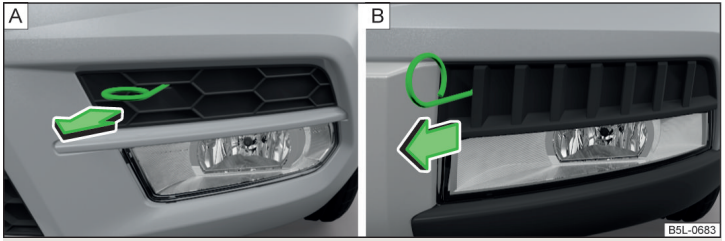

Fig. 199 **Guard: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 217 first.

› Undo the protective grille in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 199 using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 198, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the protective grille.

Remove the protective grille for fog lights - sensor plug for parking assistance

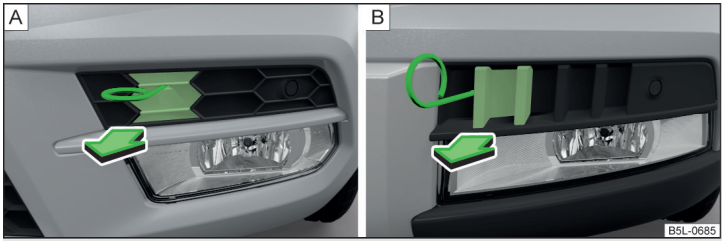

Fig. 200 **Guard: Version 1/version 2**

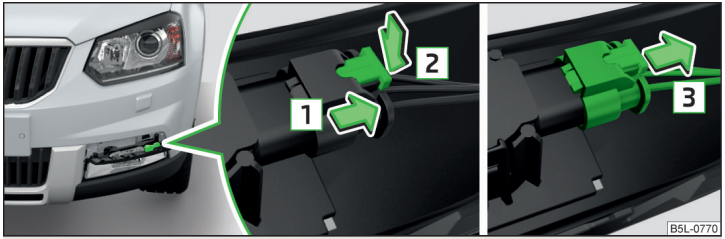

Fig. 201 **Remove the plug**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 217 first.

› Remove the plastic cover for the guard in the arrow direction » Fig. 200 using the bow to pull the full wheel covers » page 198, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the remaining part of the grille.
› Pull the latch out of the connector in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 201.
› Undo the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 3.

The connector is installed in reverse order.

Replacing the bulb for the fog lights

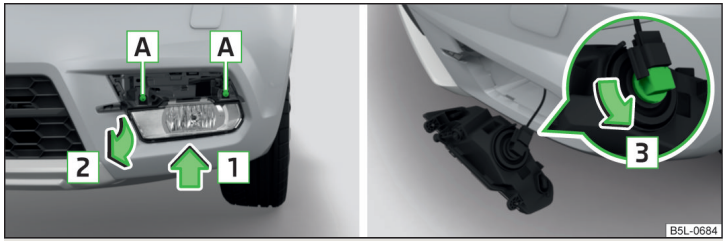

Fig. 202 **Principle sketch: Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 217 first.

First remove the grille for the fog lights and before changing bulbs » Fig. 199 *on page 218* and / or » Fig. 200 *on page 219*.

Remove the headlight

› Unscrew the two bolts A » Fig. 202 with the screwdriver » page 198.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.

Replacing the light bulb

› Pull the plug on the lamp base.
› Turn the lamp socket to the stop in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 202 and pull it out.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 3 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector on the lamp base.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 202 and tighten.
› Attach the connector on guard carefully » Fig. 201 *on page 219*[1)].
› Insert the protective grille and press it in.
› Replace the plastic cover and press into the guard » Fig. 200 *on page 219*[1)].

The protective grille must engage firmly.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with parking assistance system.

CAUTION

For vehicles with parking assistance, we recommend that after changing the light bulb in the fog lights, the system is checked by a specialist.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

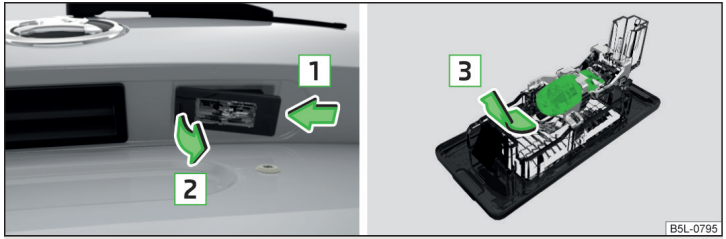

Fig. 203 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe and on page 217 first.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 203.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear Light

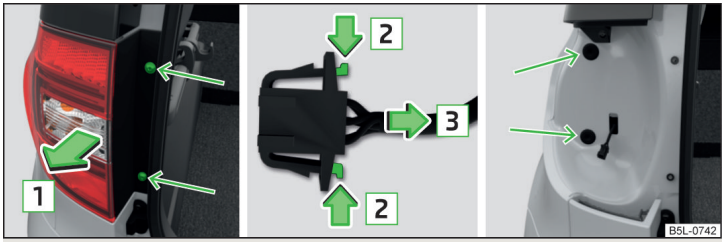

Fig. 204 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe and on page 217 first.

Removing

› Open the tailgate.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 198, *Vehicle tool kit* to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 204.
› Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 204.
› Dis23connect the plug connection by pressing the catches in direction of arrow 2 and by pulling them in direction of arrow 3.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the light and lock it securely.
› Insert the light into the mounts in the body » Fig. 204.
› Carefully press the light into the body so that the bolts 1 » Fig. 205 *on page 221* or » Fig. 206 *on page 221* on the light engage into the mounts on the body.
› Screw the light with the screws into place » Fig. 204.

Replacing bulbs in rear light

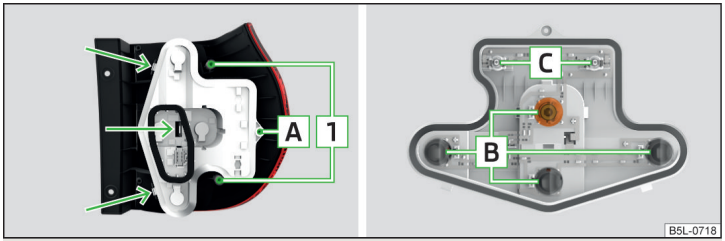

Fig. 205 **Inner part of the light: Ground light**

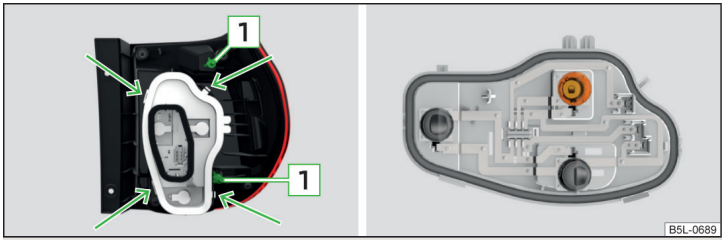

Fig. 206 **Inner part of the light: Light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 217 first.

Ground light

› With the spanner from the vehicle tools unscrew the securing screw A » Fig. 205.
› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches in the areas » Fig. 205 marked with arrows and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective bulb B until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb B into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Pull bulb C out of the socket and insert a new bulb.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage audibly.

Light with LED diodes

› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches in the areas » Fig. 206marked with arrows and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 206 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage audibly.

Note

Visit a specialist garage if an LED diode is faulty.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

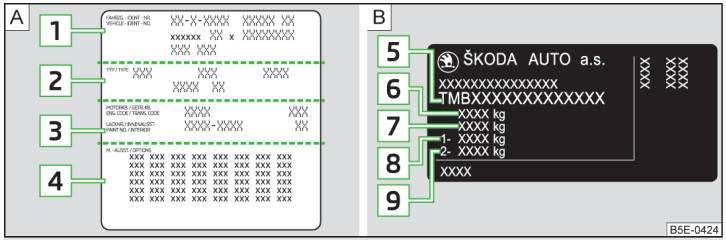

Fig. 207 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 207 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 207 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
6 Maximum permissible gross weight
7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
8 Maximum permissible front axle load
9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight
This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » page 226.

Payload
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
› The weight of the passengers.
› The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
› The trailer nose weight with trailer (max. 80 kg and 85 kg [1]).

Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note
▪ The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

[1] Applies to vehicles 4x4 with the 2.0 l/103 kW TDI CR and 2.0 L/125 kW TDI CR engine.

Dimensions

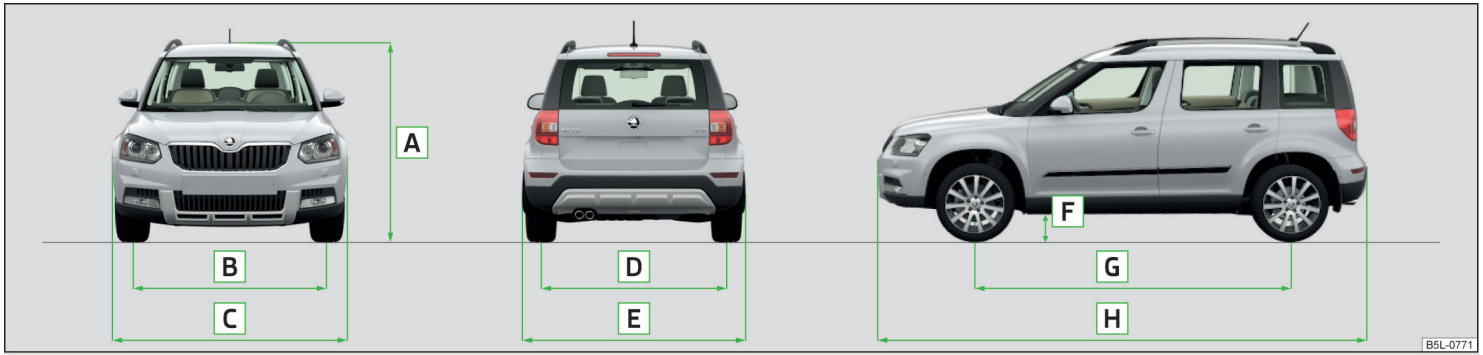

Fig. 208 **Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 208	Specification			Yeti	Yeti Outdoor
A	Height	Basic dimension		1691	1691
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/77 kW TSI engine.	Basic dimension	1671	1691
			Vehicles with raised suspension	1691	-
		Vehicles with the 1.6 l/77 kW TSI engine.		1671	1671
B	Front track			1541	1541
C	Width			1793	1793
D	Rear track			1537	1537
E	Width including exterior mirror			1956	1956
F	Clearance	Basic dimension		180	180
		Vehicles with 1.2 l / 77 kW TSI engine	Basic dimension	155	180
			Vehicles with raised suspension	180	-
		Vehicles with 1.6 l / 77 kW TSI CR engine		155	155
G	Wheel base			2578	2578
H	Length			4222	4222

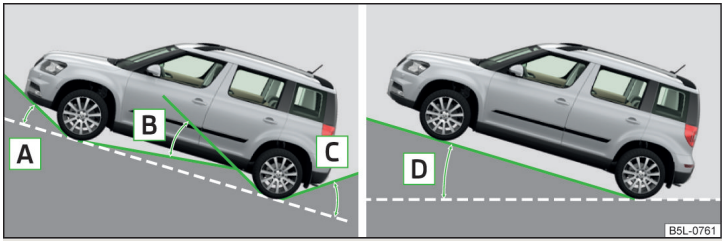

Fig. 209 **Principle sketch: Overhang angle and ramp angle / slope angle**

Angle » Fig. 209

- A Overhang angle, front
- B Ramp angle
- C Overhang angle, rear
- D Pitch angle / climbing ability

Overhang angle
The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Ramp angle
The angle indication determines the angle at which you can drive the vehicle over a ramp, at a slow speed, without the under body of the vehicle touching the ramp edge.

Pitch angle / climbing ability
The specification to which the vehicle can drive up a slope on its own (depending inter alia on the road surface and engine power).

The height gained over a distance of 100 m (slope) is specified in percent or degrees.

Angle and climbing ability

Engine		Overhang angle (°)	Overhang angle (°)	Ramp angle (°)	Slope angle (°) / climbing ability (%)
1.2 l / 77 kW TSI	Yeti	17.1 / 19[a)]	30 / 32[a)]	17.2 / 19.6[a)]	24 / 45
	Yeti Outdoor	19	32	19.6	24 / 45
1.4 ltr. / 90 kW TSI		19	32	19.6	27 / 50
1.6 l. / 81 kW MPI	MG5	19	32	19.6	22 / 40
	AG6	19	32	19.6	45 / 100
1.8 l/118 (112) kW TSI		19	32	19.6	29 / 55
1.6 ltr. / 77 kW TDI CR		17.1	30	17.2	29 / 55
2.0 ltr / 81 kW TDI CR	MG5	19	32	19.6	29 / 55
	MG6 4 x 4	19	32	19.6	31 / 60
2.0 l / 103 (125) kW TDI CR		19	32	19.6	31 / 60
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR - Green tec		19	32	19.6	29 / 55

[a)] Valid for vehicles with raised suspension.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77 / 5000	175 / 1550, -4100	4 / 1197

Performances and weights	MG6 Yeti	MG6 Yeti Outdoor	DSG7 Yeti	DSG7 Yeti Outdoor
Top speed (km/h)	177 175[a)b)c)]	175	176 173[a)b)c)]	173
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.4 11.8[a)b)c)]	11.8	11.7 12.0[a)b)c)]	12.0
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1334-1499 (1340-1505)[a)] (1334-1494)[b)] (1340-1500)[d)]	1340-1505 (1340-1500)[b)]	1359-1524 (1365-1530)[a)] (1359-1519)[b)] (1365-1525)[d)]	1365-1530 (1365-1525)[b)]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200 [e)] / 1500[f)]			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660 / 670[a)]	670	670 / 680[a)]	680

a) Valid for vehicles with raised suspension.
b) Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).
c) Applies to vehicles of category N1.
d) Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF) with raised suspension.
e) Inclines up to 12 %.
f) Inclines up to 8 %.

1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
90 / 5000	200 / 1500, -4000	4 / 1390
Performance and weights	**MG6**	**DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)	185	182
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.6
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1390-1540	1405-1570 (1405-1565)[a]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1300 [b] / 1600[c]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	690	700

[a] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).
[b] Inclines up to 12 %.
[c] Inclines up to 8 %.

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm^3)
81 / 5800	155 / 3800	4 / 1598
Performance and weights	**MG5**	**AG6**
Top speed (km/h)	175	172
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.8	13.3
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1320-1485 (1320-1480)[a]	1345-1510 (1345-1505)[a]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	-	1100
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	-	650

[a] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).

1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
112 / 4300, -6200	250 / 1500, -4200	4 / 1798
Performance and weights		**DSG6 4 x 4**
Top speed (km/h)		192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		9.0
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1540-1705
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		750

1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
118 / 4500, -6200	250 / 1500, -4500	4 / 1798
Performance and weights		**MG6 4 x 4**
Top speed (km/h)		200
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.4
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1505-1670 (1505-1665)[a)]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		750

[a)] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm^3)
77 / 4400	250 / 1500, -2500	4 / 1598
Performance and weights	**MG5**	**DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)	176	175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.1	12.2
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1410-1505	1445-1610 (1445-1605)[a]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400 [b] / 1700[c]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	700	

[a] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).
[b] Uphills up to 12 %.
[c] Uphills up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine

	Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
MG5	81 / 4200	250 / 1500, -2500	4 / 1968
MG6 4 x 4		280 / 1750, -2750	
Performance and Weights		**MG5**	**MG6 4 x 4**
Top speed (km/h)		177	174
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		11.6	12.2
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1420-1585 (1420-1580)[a]	1525-1690 (1525-1685)[a]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1500 [b] / 1700[c]	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		700	750

[a] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).
[b] Uphills up to 12 %.
[c] Uphills up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
103 / 4200	320 / 1750, -2500		4 / 1968
Performance and weights	**MG6**	**MG6 4 x 4**	**DSG6 4 x 4**
Top speed (km/h)	193	190	187
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.7	9.9	10.2
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1465-1610 (1465-1605)[a)]	1535-1700 (1535-1695)[a)]	1560-1725 (1560-1720)[a)]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800	2100 / 2000[a)]	2100 / 2000[a)]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	750	750

[a)] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).

2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
125 / 4200	350 / 1750, -2500	4 / 1968
Performance and weights	**MG6 4 x 4**	**DSG6 4 x 4**
Top speed (km/h)	201	197
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.6
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1540-1705 (1540-1700)[a)]	1565-1730 (1565-1725)[a)]
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	2100 / 2000[a)]	2100
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	750

[a)] Applies to multi-purpose vehicles (AF).

Index

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

- Easy content navigation
- Easy content reading
- Full text search through the entire manual
- Tab for quick access to favourite chapter

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♲ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Yeti anglicky 11.2014
S90.5610.19.20
5L0012720AH

5L0012720AH